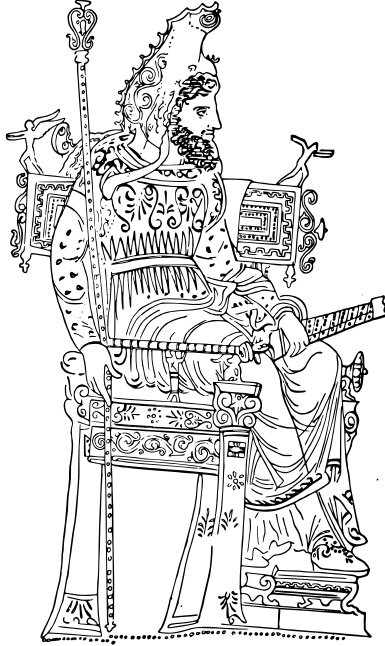


# ΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΟΣ ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ



1-2

This book is a presentation of a bilingual text with student aids, built using open-source software. For information about how the book is intended to be used and why it's designed the way it is, see:

<https://bitbucket.org/ben-crowell/ransom/src/master/README.md>

rev. December 24, 2025

The Greek text of the Anabasis is based on the edition by Marchant, 1904. The English translation is by Dakyns, 1901.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is (c) 2025 Benjamin Crowell and CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

*vocabulary*

**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid)  
muster

**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;  
appoint; (mid) declare

**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp

**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick

**βίος** life ~biology

**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology

**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander

~ballistic

**Ἕλλην** Greek

**ἐξαιτέω** demand ~etiology

**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm

~volunteer

**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon  
~pomp

**ξενία** hospitality ~xenophobe

**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe

**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman ~hoplite

**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian  
governor

**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
understand ~epilepsy

**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle

**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle

**τριακόσιοι** three hundred ~three

**ὑποπτεύω** guess, observe, be  
suspicious of

## 1.1

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡσθένει Δαρείος καὶ ὑπώπτει τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τῶ παιδὲ ἀμφοτέρῳ παρῆναι. ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανε· Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε, καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι ἐς Καστωλοῦ πεδίου ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὀπλίτας ἀνέβη τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν Παρράσιον. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρείος καὶ κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαίτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν.

1.1

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο,  
 πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος·  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ |be weak, sick, -είος καὶ |guess, ob-|conclusion, τοῦ  
 βίου, ἐβούλετο τῷ παιδὲ ἀμφοτέρῳ παρῆναι. ὁ μὲν οὖν  
 πρεσβύτερος παρῶν ἐτύχανε· Κῦρον δὲ |send; (mid) summon  
 ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν |satrap ἐποίησε, καὶ  
 στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν |show, point out; ap- ὅσοι ἐς Καστωλοῦ  
 |point; (mid) declare  
 πεδίον |press close together; ἀβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν  
 |(mid) muster  
 Τισσαφέρην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν |Greek ἔχων |hoplite, heavy in-  
 |fantryman  
 ἀνέβη |three hundred, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν Παρράσιον.  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ |bring about, Δαρείος καὶ κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν  
 |finish  
 Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρην |throw across; ὃν Κῦρον πρὸς  
 |slander  
 τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς |plot, plan, harm ἔτατο. ὁ δὲ πείθεται  
 καὶ |seize, capture; Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ  
 |understand  
 |demand αὐτὸν |send away πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν.

## 1.1

Darius and Parysatis had two sons: the elder was named Artaxerxes, and the younger Cyrus. Now, as Darius lay sick and felt that the end of life drew near, he wished both his sons to be with him. The elder, as it chanced, was already there, but Cyrus he must needs send for from the province over which he had made him satrap, having appointed him general moreover of all the forces that muster in the plain of the Castolus. Thus Cyrus went up, taking with him Tissaphernes as his friend, and accompanied also by a body of Hellenes, three hundred heavy armed men, under the command of Xenias the Parrhasian.

Now when Darius was dead, and Artaxerxes was established in the kingdom, Tissaphernes brought slanderous accusations against Cyrus before his brother, the king, of harbouring designs against him. And Artaxerxes, listening to the words of Tissaphernes, laid hands upon Cyrus, desiring to put him to death; but his mother made intercession for him, and sent him back again in safety to his province.

*vocabulary*

**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid)  
muster

**ἀπαράσκευος** unprepared

**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp

**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning  
~oligarch

**ἀτιμάζω** (i) insult, dishonor

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**βασιλεύω** be king

**βέλτιστος** best, noblest

**διατίθημι** arrange; set out goods for  
sale ~thesis

**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
~volunteer

**ἐπικρύπτω** hide something; (mid) do

secretly ~cryptic

**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee

**εὐνοϊκός** friendly, not hostile

**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)  
there is a danger that

**μῆποτε** absolutely never

**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
great

**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage

**συλλογή** gathering, summary, raising  
troops

**φρούραρχος** garrison commander

**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
~phylactery

ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθείς, βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλά, ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἄρταξέρξην. ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελείτο ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἶησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἡθροίζεν ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέα.

ᾧ οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν. ὁπόσας εἶχε φυλακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομένα, τότε δὲ ἀφειστήκεσαν πρὸς Κύρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου·



ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε |encounter danger; dishonor  
 (+inf) there is a  
 ὅπως |absolutely danger that  
 never  
 δύνηται, |be king ἀντ' ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ  
 μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν  
 |be king Ἀρταξέρξη. ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο τῶν παρὰ  
 βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω |arrange; |send away  
 set out  
 ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ |goods for  
 sale  
 ἐαυτῷ δὲ |non-Greek |take care of, ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ  
 oversee  
 εἶσαν καὶ |friendly, ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν  
 not hostile  
 δύναμιν |press close|very ἐδύνατο |hide something;  
 together; (mid) (mid) do secretly  
 ὅπως ὅτι |muster unprepared λάβοι βασιλέα.

Ὡδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν |gathering, |as/how ἡ- |guard,  
 summary, many/great |prison,  
 ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι |transmit; order, sum- |garrison watch  
 mon, recommend, en- |commander  
 λαμβάνειν ἀνδράς |courage  
 |best, noblest, ὡς |plot, plan, harm Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς  
 πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους  
 τὸ |ancient, from Ἀσιλέως δεδομέναι, τότε δὲ ἀφειστήκεσαν  
 the beginning  
 πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου

He then, having so escaped through peril and dishonour, fell to considering, not only how he might avoid ever again being in his brother's power, but how, if possible, he might become king in his stead. Parysatis, his mother, was his first resource; for she had more love for Cyrus than for Artaxerxes upon his throne. Moreover Cyrus's behaviour towards all who came to him from the king's court was such that, when he sent them away again, they were better friends to himself than to the king his brother. Nor did he neglect the barbarians in his own service; but trained them, at once to be capable as warriors and devoted adherents of himself. Lastly, he began collecting his Hellenic armament, but with the utmost secrecy, so that he might take the king as far as might be at unawares.

The manner in which he contrived the levying of the troops was as follows: First, he sent orders to the commandants of garrisons in the cities (so held by him), bidding them to get together as large a body of picked Peloponnesian troops as they severally were able, on the plea that Tissaphernes was plotting against their cities; and truly these cities of Ionia had originally belonged to Tissaphernes, being given to him by the king; but at this time, with the exception of Miletus,

*vocabulary*

**ἀντιπέρα** (αἶ) on the other side of

~pierce

**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp

**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with

**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste

**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute

**ἐκβάλλω** throw out, fell, let fall

~ballistic

**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of ~petal

**ἐκπίτνω** fall out of

**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme ~volunteer

**ἔχθω** (mp) be hated ~external

**κατάγω** lead down/home; land

~demagogue

**προαισθάνομαι** forbode, know  
beforehand

**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;  
prediction ~fame

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion

**συμπράσσω** cooperate

**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's  
support, seize; speak up; imagine

~epilepsy

ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαισθόμενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα  
 βουλευομένους ἀποστῆναι πρὸς Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν  
 ἀπέκτεινε τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς  
 φεύγοντας συλλέξας στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ  
 κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν καὶ ἐπειράτο κατάγειν τοὺς  
 ἐκπεπτωκότας. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ  
 ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα.

Πρὸς δὲ βασιλέα πέμπων ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ  
 δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην  
 ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα·  
 ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ  
 ἡσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνει δ' ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν  
 ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο  
 αὐτῶν πολεμούντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε  
 τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν  
 Τισσαφέρνους ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.

Ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ  
 κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος

ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνῃς |forbode, know be- τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα  
|forehand  
βουλευομένους ἀποστῆναι πρὸς Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν  
ἀπέκτεινε τοὺς δ' |throw out, |fell, let fall |ό δὲ Κῦρος |take under one's support,  
|seize; speak up; imagine  
φεύγοντας |collect, |army ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ  
|assemble  
κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν καὶ ἐπειράτο |lead down/home; land  
ἐκπεπτωκότας. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη |pretext; motive; |νῦν τοῦ  
|prediction  
ἀθροίζεν |army

Πρὸς δὲ βασιλέα πέμπων ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ  
δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνῃν  
ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ |cooperate αὐτῷ ταῦτα·  
ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν |a plot, scheme· ἵκ  
ἡσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνῃ δ' ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν  
ἀμφὶ τὰ |army |spend, con- ὥστε οὐδὲν ἥχθετο  
|sume, waste  
αὐτῶν πολεμούντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος |send away  
τοὺς γιγνομένους |portion, |βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν  
|tax, tribute  
Τισσαφέρνους ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.

Ἄλλο δὲ |army αὐτῷ |collect, ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ  
|assemble  
κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος

they had all revolted to Cyrus. In Miletus, Tissaphernes, having become aware of similar designs, had forestalled the conspirators by putting some to death and banishing the remainder. Cyrus, on his side, welcomed these fugitives, and having collected an army, laid siege to Miletus by sea and land, endeavouring to reinstate the exiles; and this gave him another pretext for collecting an armament. At the same time he sent to the king, and claimed, as being the king's brother, that these cities should be given to himself rather than that Tissaphernes should continue to govern them; and in furtherance of this end, the queen, his mother, co-operated with him, so that the king not only failed to see the design against himself, but concluded that Cyrus was spending his money on armaments in order to make war on Tissaphernes. Nor did it pain him greatly to see the two at war together, and the less so because Cyrus was careful to remit the tribute due to the king from the cities which belonged to Tissaphernes.

A Third army was being collected for him in the Chersonese, over against Abydos, the origin of which

*vocabulary*

**ἀγάζω** exalt, adore

**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology

**ἀντιστασιώτης** -ου (m, 1) partisan  
adversary

**δαρεικός** Persian coin

**δισχίλιοι** 2000 ~kilo-

**Ἑλλην** Greek

**ἕξ** six ~hexagon

**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy ~loose

**μισθός** reward, wages

**μυρίος** (ἰ) 10,000 ~myriad

**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics

**οἴκοι** at home ~economics

**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available

**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain  
~genus

**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy

**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have  
sex ~genus

**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion

**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
meet, fall in with ~ballistic

**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
~volunteer

**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000 ~kilo-

**τροφή** food, upkeep ~atrophy

**φυγός** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee  
~fugitive

**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive

**χρυσίον** (ἰ) gold coin

**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τούτῳ συγγενόμενος ὁ Κῦρος ἠγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μυρίους δαρεικοὺς. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον στράτευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὀρμώμενος τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλησποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα.

Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὢν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὡς οὕτως περιγενόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἑξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευῇται. οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στράτευμα.



Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τούτῳ |associate with, ὁ Κῦρος  
|meet, have sex  
|exalt, τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μυρίους |Persian coin ὁ  
|adore  
δὲ λαβὼν τὸ |gold coin |army |collect, ἀπὸ τούτων  
|assemble  
τῶν χρημάτων καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος  
τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον |inhabit καὶ ὠφέλει  
τοὺς |Greek ὥστε καὶ χρήματα |pit against; compare; εἰς  
|mp: meet, fall in with  
τὴν |food, τῶν |soldier, αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις  
|upkeep |mercenary  
ἐκοῦσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ  
|army

Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὢν ἐτύγγανεν αὐτῷ,  
καὶ |press, ὑπὸ τῶν |at |partisan adversary ἔρχεται  
|squeeze |home  
πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ |ask for αὐτὸν εἰς |2000 ξένους  
καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν |reward,, ὡς οὕτως περιγενόμενος  
|wages  
ἂν τῶν |partisan adversary ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ  
εἰς |4000 καὶ ἕξ μηνῶν |reward,, καὶ δεῖται  
|wages  
αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν |unyoke; πρὸς τοὺς |partisan  
|destroy |adversary  
πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ |give advice; (mid) οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ  
|consult  
ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον |army

was as follows: There was a Lacedaemonian exile, named Clearchus, with whom Cyrus had become associated. Cyrus admired the man, and made him a present of ten thousand darics. Clearchus took the gold, and with the money raised an army, and using the Chersonese as his base of operations, set to work to fight the Thracians north of the Hellespont, in the interests of the Hellenes, and with such happy result that the Hellespontine cities, of their own accord, were eager to contribute funds for the support of his troops. In this way, again, an armament was being secretly maintained for Cyrus.

Then there was the Thessalian Aristippus, Cyrus's friend, who, under pressure of the rival political party at home, had come to Cyrus and asked him for pay for two thousand mercenaries, to be continued for three months, which would enable him, he said, to gain the upper hand of his antagonists. Cyrus replied by presenting him with six months' pay for four thousand mercenaries—only stipulating that Aristippus should not come to terms with his antagonists without final consultation with himself. In this way he secured to himself the secret maintenance of a fourth armament.

Further, he

*vocabulary*

**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid)  
muster  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
upwards, out to sea  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek  
**ἐκβάλλω** throw out, fell, let fall  
~ballistic  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ξενία** hospitality ~xenophobe  
**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe  
**οἴκοι** at home ~economics  
**παντάπασι** altogether; yes, certainly

**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
~genus  
**πρόξενος** public/foreign agent, patron  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;  
prediction ~fame  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
campaign ~strategy  
**συναλλάσσω** bring together, reconcile  
**φυγὰς** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee  
~fugitive

Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ξένον ὄντα ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς ἐς Πισίδας βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ.

Σοφαίνεται δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τοῖς Μιλησίων. καὶ ἐποιοῦν οὕτως οὗτοι.

## 1.2

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ ἄνω, τὴν μὲν πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πισίδας βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἤκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα· καὶ Ξενία

|public/foreign agent, patron τὸν Βοιωτίον ξένον ὄντα ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα

ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους |be beside, attend, ὡς ἐς Πισίδας

βουλόμενος |make an expedition, war, campaign, πράγματα παρεχόντων

τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἐαυτοῦ χώρᾳ.

Σοφαίνετον δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν

Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας

λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων

Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς |exile, refugee, τοῖς Μιλησίων. καὶ

ἐποιοῦν οὕτως οὗτοι.

## 1.2

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ ἄνω, τὴν μὲν

|pretext; motive; prediction, οἰεῖτο ὡς Πισίδας βουλόμενος |throw out, fell, let fall

|altogether; yes, certainly, ἐκ τῆς χώρας καὶ |press close together; (mid) muster, ὅτους

τό τε |non-Greek καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. |there, here καὶ

|transmit; order, summon, ἀρχῇ λαβόντι ἤκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ |recommend, encourage

|army καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίπῳ |bring together, reconcile, πρὸς τοὺς

|at home |send away πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε |army καὶ Ξενίᾳ

bade Proxenus, a Boeotian, who was another friend, get together as many men as possible, and join him in an expedition which he meditated against the Pisidians, who were causing annoyance to his territory. Similarly two other friends, Sophaenetes the Stymphalian, and Socrates the Achaean, had orders to get together as many men as possible and come to him, since he was on the point of opening a campaign, along with Milesian exiles, against Tissaphernes. These orders were duly carried out by the officers in question.

## 1.2

But when the right moment seemed to him to have come, at which he should begin his march into the interior, the pretext which he put forward was his desire to expel the Pisidians utterly out of the country; and he began collecting both his Asiatic and his Hellenic armaments, avowedly against that people. From Sardis in each direction his orders sped: to Clearchus, to join him there with the whole of his army; to Aristippus, to come to terms with those at home, and to despatch to him the troops in his employ; to Xenias the Arcadian, who was acting as general in chief

*vocabulary*

**ἀκρόπολις** -εως (f) citadel, high part of a city ~acute  
**γυμνής** light infantry; serf  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**κατάγω** lead down/home; land ~demagogue  
**καταπράσσω** accomplish, build ~practice  
**ξενία** hospitality ~xenophobe  
**ξενικός** strange, foreign  
**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how great

**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend ~genus  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops ~pelt  
**πεντακόσιοι** 500  
**προίστημι** put forward; (+gen) be head of, guard ~station  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy  
**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000 ~kilo-  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred ~three  
**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand; submit to  
**φυγὰς** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee ~fugitive  
**χίλιοι** (ī) thousand ~kilo-

τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι  
 ξενικοῦ, ἤκειν παραγγέλλει λαβόντα τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν  
 ὅποσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. ἐκάλεσε  
 δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας  
 ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς,  
 εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ἐφ' ᾧ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν  
 παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἠδέως  
 ἐπείθοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα  
 παρήσαν εἰς Σάρδεις.

Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς  
 Σάρδεις ὀπλίτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους, Πρόξενος δὲ παρὴν  
 ἔχων ὀπλίτας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, γυμνήτας  
 δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὀπλίτας  
 ἔχων χιλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων ὡς  
 πεντακοσίους, Πασίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους μὲν  
 ὀπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρεγένετο·  
 ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον  
 στρατευομένων. οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο.



τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι

|strange, , ἤκειν |transmit; order, `summon, τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν  
|foreign |recommend, encourage

|as/how many/great - αν τὰς |citadel φυλάττειν. ἐκάλεσε

δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς |exile,  
|refugee

ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ |make an expedi-|promise αὐτοῖς,  
|tion, war, cam-

εἰ καλῶς |accomplish, εἴ ᾧ |make an expedition, πρόσθεν  
|build |war, campaign

παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς |lead |homeward ἰ δὲ |sweet  
|down/home;

ἐπείθοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ |tool  
|land

παρήσαν εἰς Σάρδεις.

Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν |be beside, attend

Σάρδεις |hoplite, heavy|4000 , Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν  
|infantryman

ἔχων |hoplite, heavy in-|500 καὶ χιλίους, |light  
|infantryman

δὲ |500 , Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος |hoplite, heavy in-  
|infantryman

ἔχων χιλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς |hoplite, heavy ν ὥς  
|infantryman

|500 , Πασίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς |three hundred μὲν

|hoplite, , |three hundred δὲ |light troops ἔχων |be beside, attend  
|heavy in-  
|infantryman

ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον

|make an expedition, οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο.  
|war, campaign

of the foreign troops in the cities, to present himself with all the men available, excepting only those who were actually needed to garrison the citadels. He next summoned the troops at present engaged in the siege of Miletus, and called upon the exiles to follow him on his intended expedition, promising them that if he were successful in his object, he would not pause until he had reinstated them in their native city. To this invitation they hearkened gladly; they believed in him; and with their arms they presented themselves at Sardis.

So, too, Xenias arrived at Sardis with the contingent from the cities, four thousand hoplites; Proxenus, also, with fifteen hundred hoplites and five hundred light-armed troops; Sophaenetes the Stymphalian, with one thousand hoplites; Socrates the Achaean, with five hundred hoplites; while the Megarian Pasion came with three hundred hoplites and three hundred peltasts. This latter officer, as well as Socrates, belonged to the force engaged against Miletus. These all joined him at Sardis.

But Tissaphernes did not

*vocabulary*

**βασίλεια** noblewoman

**βασίλειος** kingly

**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic

**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion

**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius

**εὐρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
wind

**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote

**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn

**κελαινός** black, dark, swarthy, murky

**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity

**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics

**οἰκουμένη** inhabited

**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus

**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ι, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman ~hoplite

**παράδεισος** park

**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
ca. 5 km

**παρασκευή** preparation

**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
~pelt

**πεντακόσιοι** 500

**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square  
~plethora

**σταθμός** cottage; post

**στόλος** expedition, equipment, forces  
~apostle

**χίλιοι** (ιι) thousand ~kilo-

Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὥς ἐπὶ Πισίδας τὴν παρασκευήν, πορεύεται ὥς βασιλέα ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἱππέας ἔχων ὥς πεντακοσίους. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἴρηκα ὠρμᾶτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν. τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα· γέφυρα δὲ ἐπὴν ἐξευγμένη πλοίοις ἐπτά. τοῦτον διαβὰς ἐξελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίας σταθμόν ἕνα παρασάγγας ὀκτῶ εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἐπτά· καὶ ἦκε Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους, Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Κελαινάς, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδεισος

Τισσαφέρνης δὲ |notice, realize, ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα  
|learn  
ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὥς ἐπὶ Πισίδας τὴν |preparation ,  
πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἱππέας ἔχων  
ὥς |500 καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε  
Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

|authority; ἔχων οὖς εἶρηκα ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ  
|validity  
|drive out διὰ τῆς Λυδίας |cottage; post ρεῖς |ca. 5 km  
εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν. τούτου τὸ

|width; (caps)|30 meters|dam, dike;|lie |yoke, join πλοίοις  
|the east wind|or its|bridge upon;  
|square  
ἐπτά. τούτων |pass over|drive out |ap- διὰ Φρυγίας |cottage; post  
|cross  
εἶνα |ca. 5 km |eight εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην  
καὶ |blessed with a αὶ μεγάλην. |there, here ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας  
|good genius  
ἐπτά· καὶ ἦκε Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς |hoplite, heavy ν χιλίους  
|infantryman  
καὶ |light troops |500 , Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ  
Ὀλυνθίους.

|thence |drive out |cottage; post ρεῖς |ca. 5 km εἴκοσιν  
εἰς |black , τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ  
|blessed with a|there, here ἔγρω βασιλεία ἦν καὶ |park  
|good genius

fail to note these proceedings. An equipment so large pointed to something more than an invasion of Pisidia: so he argued; and with what speed he might, he set off to the king, attended by about five hundred horse. The king, on his side, had no sooner heard from Tissaphernes of Cyrus's great armament, than he began to make counter-preparations.

Thus Cyrus, with the troops which I have named, set out from Sardis, and marched on and on through Lydia three stages, making two and twenty parasangs, to the river Maeander. That river is two hundred feet broad, and was spanned by a bridge consisting of seven boats. Crossing it, he marched through Phrygia a single stage, of eight parasangs, to Colossae, an inhabited city, prosperous and large. Here he remained seven days, and was joined by Menon the Thessalian, who arrived with one thousand hoplites and five hundred peltasts, Dolopes, Aenianes, and Olynthians. From this place he marched three stages, twenty parasangs in all, to Celaenae, a populous city of Phrygia, large and prosperous. Here Cyrus owned a palace and a large park full

*vocabulary*

**ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture  
**ἀκρόπολις** -εως (f) citadel, high part of  
a city ~acute  
**ἄντρον** cave  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**βασίλεια** noblewoman  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**γυμνάζω** exercise, do training  
**δέρμα** -τος (n, 3) skin, hide  
~dermatology  
**ἐκδέρω** to skin ~dermatology  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
state ~ballistic  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐρίζω** struggle, contend  
**ἐρυμνός** fortified, impregnable  
**εὐρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
wind  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
overcome; (active) defeat  
**θηρεύω** hunt, fish ~fierce

**κελαινός** black, dark, swarthy, murky  
**κρεμάννυμι** (ῶ) hang  
**ὅθεν** whence  
**οἰκοδομέω** build, build a house  
**ὀκταχόσιοι** 800  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman ~hoplite  
**παράδεισος** park  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
~pelt  
**πηγή** headwaters, fountain  
**πηγός** stout, mighty  
**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of  
~plethora  
**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat  
**σοφία** skill; wisdom ~sophistry  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**φυγὰς** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee  
~fugitive  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive  
**χίλιοι** (ιι) thousand ~kilo-

μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκείνος ἐθήρευν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὅποτε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ρεῖ ὁ Μαϊάνδρος ποταμός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαϊάνδρον·

Τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ εὐρὸς ἐστὶν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσίαν νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ σοφίας, καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασιλεία καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾷκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρήτας



μέγας |wild, savage θηρίων |full, complete; (+gen)|hunt, fish ἀπὸ  
 |full of  
 ἵππων, ὅποτε |exercise, do training βούλοιτο ἐαυτόν τε καὶ τοὺς  
 ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ |park ρεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος  
 ποταμός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· ρεῖ  
 δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου  
 βασιλέως βασιλεία ἐν |black |fortified ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς  
 τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ |citadel ρεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος  
 διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ |throw in; inspire ` , Μαίανδρον·

Τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ |width; (caps) ἑξήκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.  
 |the east wind  
 |there, here ἔγεται Ἀπόλλων |to skin Μαρσύαν νικήσας  
 |struggle, contend οἱ περὶ σοφίας, καὶ τὸ |skin, |hang ἐν  
 |hide  
 τῷ |cave |whence ἡ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμός  
 καλεῖται Μαρσύας. |there, here ἔρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος  
 |(pass) be weaker, be go away ἔγεται |build, build a ταῦτά  
 |overcome; (active) de-|from, retreat |house  
 |feat  
 τε τὰ βασιλεία καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν |citadel . |there, here  
 ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος  
 ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων |hoplite, heavy| ἰοὺς καὶ  
 |infantryman  
 |light troops Θράκας |800 καὶ |archer Κρήτας

of wild beasts, which he used to hunt on horseback, whenever he wished to give himself or his horses exercise. Through the midst of the park flows the river Maeander, the sources of which are within the palace buildings, and it flows through the city of Celaenae. The great king also has a palace in Celaenae, a strong place, on the sources of another river, the Marsyas, at the foot of the acropolis. This river also flows through the city, discharging itself into the Maeander, and is five and twenty feet broad. Here is the place where Apollo is said to have flayed Marsyas, when he had conquered him in the contest of skill. He hung up the skin of the conquered man, in the cavern where the spring wells forth, and hence the name of the river, Marsyas. It was on this site that Xerxes, as tradition tells, built this very palace, as well as the citadel of Celaenae itself, on his retreat from Hellas, after he had lost the famous battle. Here Cyrus remained for thirty days, during which Clearchus the Lacedaemonian arrived with one thousand hoplites and eight hundred Thracian peltasts and two hundred Cretan archers.

*vocabulary*

**ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place  
 ~agony  
**ἄθλον** ἀέθλου prize ~athlete  
**ἀνιάω** (ι) vex  
**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned  
**ἀριθμός** number  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διάγω** lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
**διακόσιοι** (ἄ) two hundred  
**δισχίλιοι** 2000 ~kilo-  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐξέτασις** scrutiny  
**ἔσχατος** farthest, last  
**θεωρέω** be sent to consult an oracle;  
 observe, contemplate  
**θύω** (ὐ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**κεραμεύς** -ως (m) potter ~ceramic  
**κέραμος** clay vessel ~ceramic  
**μισθός** reward, wages

**μυρίος** (ὐ) 10,000 ~myriad  
**ξενία** hospitality ~xenophobe  
**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**οἰκουμένη** inhabited  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ι, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only  
**παράδεισος** park  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
 ca. 5 km  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**πέλτη** shield, spear ~pelt  
**πέλτης** -ου (m, 1) type of river fish  
 ~pelt  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στλεγγίς** skin scraper  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**σύμπας** (ἄ) all together  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred ~three  
**χίλιοι** (ιι) thousand ~kilo-

διακοσίους. ἅμα δὲ καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρακόσιος ἔχων ὀπλίτας τριακοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος Ἀρκάδας ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὀπλίται μὲν μύριοι χίλιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Πέλτας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσσε καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες χρυσαῖ· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δώδεκα εἰς Κεράμων ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην πρὸς τῇ Μυσία χώρᾳ. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς Καῦστρου πεδῖον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπήτουν. ὁ δὲ ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε καὶ δηλὸς ἦν ἀνιώμενος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ

|two hundred ἄμα δὲ καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρακόσιος  
 ἔχων ὀπλίτας |three hundred καὶ Σοφαίνετος Ἀρκάδας ἔχων  
 ὀπλίτας χιλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος |scrutiny καὶ |number  
 τῶν |Greek ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ |park , καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ  
 |all together ὀπλίται μὲν μύριοι χίλιοι, |light troops δὲ ἀμφὶ  
 τοὺς |2000 .

|thence |drive out |cottage; post ὅσο |ca. 5 km δέκα εἰς  
 Πέλτας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς·  
 ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσε καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε·  
 τὰ δὲ |prize ἦσαν |skin scraper χρυσαῖ· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα  
 καὶ Κῦρος. |thence |drive out |cottage; post ὅσο |ca. 5 km  
 δώδεκα εἰς Κεράμων ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, |farthest  
 πρὸς τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρᾳ. |thence |drive out |cottage; post  
 τρεῖς |ca. 5 km τριάκοντα εἰς Καῦστρου πεδῖον, πόλιν  
 οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ τοῖς  
 στρατιώταις |owe, |reward, πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ  
 |should, |wages  
 πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας |demand τό δὲ ἐλπίδας  
 |if only |have returned  
 λέγων |lead through; ἵλος ἦν |vex οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ  
 |pass a time

At the same time, also, came Sosis the Syracusian with three thousand hoplites, and Sphaenetus the Arcadian with one thousand hoplites; and here Cyrus held a review, and numbered his Hellenes in the park, and found that they amounted in all to eleven thousand hoplites and about two thousand peltasts.

From this place he continued his march two stages—ten parasangs—to the populous city of Peltae, where he remained three days; while Xenias, the Arcadian, celebrated the Lycaea with sacrifice, and instituted games. The prizes were headbands of gold; and Cyrus himself was a spectator of the contest. From this place the march was continued two stages—twelve parasangs—to Ceramon-agora, a populous city, the last on the confines of Mysia. Thence a march of three stages—thirty parasangs—brought him to Caystru-pedion, a populous city. Here Cyrus halted five days; and the soldiers, whose pay was now more than three months in arrear, came several times to the palace gates demanding their dues; while Cyrus put them off with fine words and expectations, but could not conceal his vexation, for it was not his fashion to stint

*vocabulary*

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**Ἕλλην** Greek

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic

**ἐξέτασις** scrutiny

**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὕ) display, exhibit

**θηρεύω** hunt, fish ~fierce

**κεράννυμι** (ὕ) mix ~crater

**κεράω** mix in a bowl

**κρήνη** well, spring

**μισθός** reward, wages

**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics

**οἰκουμένη** inhabited

**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
ca. 5 km

**σταθμός** cottage; post

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**στρατιά** army ~strategy

**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have  
sex ~genus

**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid

**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
~phylactery

**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
~phylactery

Κύρου τρόπου ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι.

Ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνέεται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Σουενέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλικῶν βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ τότε ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα φυλακὴν καὶ φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίους· ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ συγγενέσθαι Κῦρον τῇ Κιλίσῃ.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐλαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ἣ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον θηρεῦσαι οἶνω κεράσας αὐτήν.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Τυριάειον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδείξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδείξαι ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων.



Κύρου τρόπον ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι.

|there, here ἀφικνέεται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ  
Κιλικῶν βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι  
χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν |army τότε ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος

|reward, |four μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα |guard, καὶ  
|wages |prison,  
|guard; περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίου |watch, ἐλέγετο δὲ  
|sentry  
καὶ |associate with, Κῦρον τῇ Κιλίσσῃ.  
|meet, have sex

|thence δὲ ἐλαύνει |cottage; post-ύο |ca. 5 km δέκα εἰς  
Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. |there, here, ἵν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν  
|well, ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ'  
|spring  
ἥ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον |hunt, fish οἶνω κεράσας  
αὐτήν.

|thence |drive out |cottage; post-ύο |ca. 5 km δέκα εἰς  
Τυριάειον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. |there, here ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας  
τρεις. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κῦρον |display,  
|exhibit  
τὸ |army αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος οὖν |display, |scrutiny  
|exhibit  
ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν |Greek καὶ τῶν |non-Greek .

payment, when he had the means.

At this point Epyaxa, the wife of Syennesis, the king of the Cilicians, arrived on a visit to Cyrus; and it was said that Cyrus received a large gift of money from the queen. At this date, at any rate, Cyrus gave the army four months' pay. The queen was accompanied by a bodyguard of Cilicians and Aspendians; and, if report speaks truly, Cyrus had intimate relations with the queen.

From this place he marched two stages—ten parasangs—to Thymbrium, a populous city. Here, by the side of the road, is the spring of Midas, the king of Phrygia, as it is called, where Midas, as the story goes, caught the satyr by drugging the spring with wine. From this place he marched two stages—ten parasangs—to Tyriaeum, a populous city. Here he halted three days; and the Cilician queen, according to the popular account, begged Cyrus to exhibit his armament for her amusement. The latter being only too glad to make such an exhibition, held a review of the Hellenes and barbarians

*vocabulary*

**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἄρμάμαξα** Persian carriage  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**αὐτόματος** self-willed, accidental  
 ~after  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**εἴτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐκκαλύπτω** disclose, reveal  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐπιχωρέω** yield  
**ἐρμηνεύς** -ος (m) interpreter  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**θεωρέω** be sent to consult an oracle;  
 observe, contemplate  
**ἵλα** (ἱᾶ) military group  
**κνημὶς** -δος (ī, f) greave  
**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip ~elastic  
**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order  
**προβάλλω** throw before; propose;  
 (mp) pretend, abandon, nominate  
 ~ballistic  
**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order  
 before  
**σαλπίζω** sound the trumpet  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**φοινίκεος** (ī) purple, red  
**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor

ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ στήναι, συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί. ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ δὲ παρήλαννον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἴλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις· εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας, παρελαύνων ἐφ' ἄρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἄρμαμάξης. εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικοῦς καὶ κνημίδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένας.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασε, στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης, πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἐρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προεῖπον τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλόμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἐπῆσαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θᾶπτον προϊόντων σὺν κραυγῇ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ

ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς |Greek ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην  
 οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ στήναι, |gather, δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς  
 |assemble  
 ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν  
 Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ |honored; left-hand ἄρσος καὶ οἱ  
 ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί. ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ  
 Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ δὲ |pass, outstrip  
 τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἵλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις· |then, there-  
 |fore, next  
 |Greek , |pass, outstrip ἐφ' |chariot καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ'  
 |Persian εἶχον δὲ πάντες |helmet; ship's ram |tunic  
 |carriage  
 |purple, red καὶ |greave καὶ τὰς |shield |disclose, reveal  
 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας |pass, , στήσας τὸ |chariot τρὸ τῆς  
 |outstrip  
 |rank of battle-έσης, πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν |interpreter παρὰ  
 τοὺς στρατηγούς τῶν |Greek ἐκέλευσε |throw before; propose;  
 (mp) pretend, abandon,  
 τὰ ὅπλα καὶ |yield ὅλην τὴν |rank of battle οἱ δὲ  
 |nominate  
 ταῦτα προείπον τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ |sound the trumpet  
 |throw before; propose; (mp) ἐπῆσαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θᾶπτον  
 |pretend, abandon, nominate  
 |to have been before, screaming, ἵπδ τοῦ |self-willed, ac-  
 |earlier |shouting |cidental running  
 ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς |tent; , τῶν δὲ  
 |stage

in the plain. He ordered the Hellenes to draw up their lines and post themselves in their customary battle order, each general marshalling his own battalion. Accordingly they drew up four-deep. The right was held by Menon and those with him; the left by Clearchus and his men; the centre by the remaining generals with theirs. Cyrus first inspected the barbarians, who marched past in troops of horses and companies of infantry. He then inspected the Hellenes; driving past them in his chariot, with the queen in her carriage. And they all had brass helmets and purple tunics, and greaves, and their shields uncovered.

After he had driven past the whole body, he drew up his chariot in front of the centre of the battle-line, and sent his interpreter Pigres to the generals of the Hellenes, with orders to present arms and to advance along the whole line. This order was repeated by the generals to their men; and at the sound of the bugle, with shields forward and spears in rest, they advanced to meet the enemy. The pace quickened, and with a shout the soldiers spontaneously fell into a run, making in the direction of the camp. Great was

*vocabulary*

**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp

**ἀρμάμαξα** Persian carriage

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**γέλως** laughter

**διαρπάζω** make prey of ~harpoon

**Ἑλλήν** Greek

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic

**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

**ἔσχατος** farthest, last

**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius

**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon

**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity

**λαμπρότης** -τος (f, 3) brilliance,

splendor, magnanimity ~lamp

**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics

**οἰκουμένη** inhabited

**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
ca. 5 km

**σκηνή** tent; stage

**σταθμός** cottage; post

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy

**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp

**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit

**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid

**ὄνιος** for sale

βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς, καὶ ἥ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἄρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες τὰ ὄνια ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλῳτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηναὺς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασε. Κῦρος δὲ ἦσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδών.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα. ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ συνέπεμψε αὐτῇ στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καππαδοκίας σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε πρὸς Δάναν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα



βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς, καὶ ἥ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ

τῆς |Persian  
|carriage καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες τὰ

|for sale ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ |Greek σὺν |laughter ἐπὶ τὰς |tent;  
|stage

ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν |brilliance, splen- ἰ τὴν  
|dor, magnanimity

τάξιν τοῦ |army ἐθαύμασε. |authority; ᾗ |be pleased, enjoy  
|validity

ἐκ τῶν |Greek εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδὼν.

|thence |drive out |cottage; post .ρεῖς |ca. 5 km εἴκοσιν

εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν |farthest . ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε

τρεῖς ἡμέρας. |thence |drive out διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας

|cottage; post .έντε |ca. 5 km τριάκοντα. ταύτην τὴν

χώραν |entrust, de-|make prey of . οἷς |Greek ὥς πολεμίαν  
|cide, allow

οὐσαν. |thence |authority; ἣν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν  
|validity

ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ |send with αὐτῇ

στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ

μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων |drive out διὰ Καππαδοκίας |cottage; post

τέτταρας |ca. 5 km εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε πρὸς Δάναν,

πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ |blessed with a ἐνταῦθα  
|good genius

ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα

the panic of the barbarians. The Cilician queen in her carriage turned and fled; the sutlers in the marketing place left their wares and took to their heels; and the Hellenes meanwhile came into camp with a roar of laughter. What astounded the queen was the brilliancy and order of the armament; but Cyrus was pleased to see the terror inspired by the Hellenes in the hearts of the Asiatics.

From this place he marched on three stages—twenty parasangs—to Iconium, the last city of Phrygia, where he remained three days. Thence he marched through Lycaonia five stages—thirty parasangs. This was hostile country, and he gave it over to the Hellenes to pillage. At this point Cyrus sent back the Cilician queen to her own country by the quickest route; and to escort her he sent the soldiers of Menon, and Menon himself. With the rest of the troops he continued his march through Cappadocia four stages—twenty-five parasangs—to Dana, a populous city, large and flourishing. Here they halted three days, within which interval Cyrus put to death, on a charge of conspiracy, a Persian nobleman named Megaphernes,

*vocabulary*

αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology  
 ἄκρα at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἄκρη at the edge, extreme  
 ἄκρις -ός (f) hilltop ~acute  
 ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἀμαξιτός road  
 ἀμήχανος helpless, impossible  
 ~mechanism  
 ἄμπελος (f) vine  
 βασιλείος kingly  
 δένδρον tree  
 δυνάστης -ου (m, 1) lord, ruler  
 εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic  
 εἰσβολή -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance  
 ~ballistic  
 ἐντεῦθεν thence  
 ἐπιβουλεύω plot, plan, harm  
 ~volunteer  
 ἐπίρρυτος running

ἰσχυρός (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
 κέγχρος small thing, bit  
 κριθή (ι) barley plant  
 κύρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
 κωλύω (ῥ) hinder, prevent  
 μελίνη millet  
 ὄρθιος shrill; steep, straight  
 παντοδαπής of every kind, manifold  
 παντοδαπός of every kind, manifold  
 περιπλέω sail around ~float  
 Πέρσης Persian  
 πυρός (ῥ) wheat  
 σήσαμον sesame  
 σήσαμος sesame  
 σκηνή tent; stage  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 τριήρης trireme ~row  
 ὕστεραῖος the next; later  
 φοινικιστής -οῦ (m, 1) dyer; persian  
 lord

Πέρσῃν Μεγαφέρην, φοινικιστὴν βασίλειον, καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων δυνάστην, αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξιτὸς ὀρθία ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυν. ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Συνένσεις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν· διὸ ἔμεινεν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἴη Συνένσεις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στράτευμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἴσω τῶν ὁρέων, καὶ ὅτι τριήρεις ἤκουε περιπλεύσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμῶν ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηναὺς οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς πεδίον μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρρυτον, καὶ δένδρων παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων· πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην καὶ κέγχρον καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθὰς φέρει. ὄρος δ' αὐτὸ

Πέρσῃν Μεγαφέρνην, |dye; persian βασίλειον, καὶ ἕτερόν  
|lord  
τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων |lord, ruler , αἰτιασάμενος |plot, plan, harm  
αὐτῷ.

|thence ἐπειρῶντο |throw into εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ δὲ  
|invasion, an entrance, ὁδὸς |road |shrill; |strong, forceful, |helpless,  
|steep, |violent |impossible  
εἰσελθεῖν |army , εἴ τις |straight |hinder, εἰλέγετο δὲ καὶ  
|prevent  
Συνένσεις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν |invasion, an  
|entrance  
διὸ ἔμεινεν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ' |the next; later  
ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἴη Συνένσεις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ  
ἦσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος |army ἦδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν  
εἴσω τῶν ὁρέων, καὶ ὅτι |trireme ἦκουε |sail around ἀπ'  
Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμὼν ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων  
καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. |authority; οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη  
|validity  
οὐδενὸς |hinder, , καὶ εἶδε τὰς |tent; οὗ οἱ Κίλικες  
|prevent |stage  
ἐφύλαττον. |thence δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς πεδίον μέγα καὶ  
καλόν, |running , καὶ |tree παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων  
καὶ |vine πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ |millet καὶ  
|small καὶ |wheat καὶ |barley φέρει. ὅρος δ' αὐτὸ  
|thing, bit |plant

a wearer of the royal purple; and along with him another high dignitary among his subordinate commanders.

From this place they endeavoured to force a passage into Cilicia. Now the entrance was by an exceedingly steep cart-road, impracticable for an army in face of a resisting force; and report said that Syennesis was on the summit of the pass guarding the approach. Accordingly they halted a day in the plain; but next day came a messenger informing them that Syenesis had left the pass; doubtless, after perceiving that Menon's army was already in Cilicia on his own side of the mountains; and he had further been informed that ships of war, belonging to the Lacedaemonians and to Cyrus himself, with Tamos on board as admiral, were sailing round from Ionia to Cilicia. Whatever the reason might be, Cyrus made his way up into the hills without let or hindrance, and came in sight of the tents where the Cilicians were on guard. From that point he descended gradually into a large and beautiful plain country, well watered, and thickly covered with trees of all sorts and vines. This plain produces sesame plentifully, as also panic and millet and barley and wheat; and it is shut in on

*vocabulary*

**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**βασίλεια** noblewoman  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**εἴτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over  
**ἐνοικέω** dwell in  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east wind  
**καπηλεῖον** shop, tavern  
**κατακόπτω** cut down, shatter  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**ὄχυρός** strong, secure  
**πάντη** everywhere  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,

ca. 5 km  
**περιέχω** (mid) protect  
**πλανάω** lead astray; (mp) wander  
 ~plankton  
**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square  
 ~plethora  
**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat  
**σόλος** lump of iron for throwing  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**ὑπερβολή** mountain pass; excess  
**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse  
**ὑψηλός** high  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

περιείχεν ὄχυρόν καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντῃ ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.

Καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμούς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσοὺς, τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, οὗ ἦν τὰ Συεννέσιος βασιλεία τοῦ Κιλικῶν βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου δὲ τῆς πόλεως ρεῖ ποταμὸς Κύνδος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέθρων. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς χωρίον ὄχυρόν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεῖα ἔχοντες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς.

Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ προτέρα Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τῶν ὁρέων τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίου δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος ἀπώλοντο· οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικῶν, οἱ δὲ ὑπολειφθέντας καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὐρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα πλανωμένους ἀπολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι



(mid) strong, καὶ |high |everywhere θαλάττης εἰς  
|protect |secure  
θάλατταν.

Καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε |cottage; post

|four |ca. 5 km πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι εἰς Ταρσοὺς,

τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ |blessed with a νῦ ἦν τὰ  
|good genius

Συεννέσιος βασιλεία τοῦ Κιλικίων βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου

δὲ τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς Κύδνος ὄνομα, |width; (cáps)  
|the east wind

|30 me- ταύτην τὴν πόλιν |leave out, pass|dwel in μετὰ  
|ters or its |over  
|square

Συεννέσιος εἰς |area; |strong, ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ  
|down- |secure  
|wards

|shop, ἔχοντες ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν  
|tavern

|inhabit ἐν |lump of iron ἐν Ἰσσοῖς.

Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ προτέρα Κύρου πέντε

ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ |mountain  
|pass; excess

τῶν ὁρέων τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον δύο |ambush, band, ἔνωνος  
|childbirth

|army ἀπώλοντο· οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν |carry off, seize π

|cut down, shatter ὁ τῶν Κιλικίων, οἱ δὲ |leave (food, person) ὡ

οὐ δυναμένους εὐρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο |army οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς

|then, |lead astray; ἀπολέσθαι ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι  
|there-(mp) wander  
|fore,  
|next

all sides by a steep and lofty wall of mountains from sea to sea.

Descending through this plain country, he advanced four stages—twenty-five parasangs—to Tarsus, a large and prosperous city of Cilicia. Here stood the palace of Syennesis, the king of the country; and through the middle of the city flows a river called the Cydnus, two hundred feet broad. They found that the city had been deserted by its inhabitants, who had betaken themselves, with Syennesis, to a strong place on the hills. All had gone, except the tavern-keepers. The sea-board inhabitants of Soli and Issi also remained.

Now Epyaxa, Syennesis's queen, had reached Tarsus five days in advance of Cyrus. During their passage over the mountains into the plain, two companies of Menon's army were lost. Some said they had been cut down by the Cilicians, while engaged on some pillaging affair; another account was that they had been left behind, and being unable to overtake the main body, or discover the route, had gone astray and perished. However it was,

*vocabulary*

**ἀκινάκης** -ου (m, 1) Persian short sword  
**ἀνδράποδον** -ς slave ~androgynous  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take aside, cut off ~epilepsy  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**βασίλεια** noblewoman  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**διαρπάζω** make prey of ~harpoon  
**εἰσελεύνομαι** drive home; land ~elastic  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**κρείσσω** more powerful; better  
**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon ~pomp  
**μηκέτι** no more  
**ὄλεθρος** ruin, destruction, death  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman ~hoplite  
**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far  
**στολή** equipment  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**στρεπτός** pliant; type of necklace ~strep throat  
**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have sex ~genus  
**συστρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) comrade ~strategy  
**τίμιος** honored, precious  
**ὑποπτεύω** guess, observe, be suspicious of  
**χρυσοχάλινος** (dī) gold-bridled  
**φέλιον** armlet, anklet

έκατὸν ὀπλίται. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, τήν τε πόλιν τοὺς  
 Ταρσοὺς διήρπασαν, διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν  
 ὀργιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ  
 εἰσήλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετεπέμπετο τὸν Σύνενεσιν πρὸς  
 ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενί πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς  
 χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρῳ ἰέναι ἤθελε, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ  
 αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστεις ἔλαβε.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Σύνενεσις  
 μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν,  
 Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ τίμα,  
 ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον καὶ στρεπτὸν χρυσοῦν καὶ ψέλια καὶ  
 ἀκινάκην χρυσοῦν καὶ στολὴν Περσικὴν, καὶ τὴν χώραν  
 μηκέτι διαρπάζεσθαι· τὰ δὲ ἥρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἣν  
 που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν.

### 1.3

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας ἑξοκσιν· οἱ  
 γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω· ὑπώπτευον

ἐκατὸν |hoplite, heavy  
|infantryman ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, τήν τε πόλιν τοὺς

Ταρσοὺς |make prey of διὰ τὸν |ruin τῶν |comrade

|anger, pro-, καὶ τὰ βασιλεια τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. |authority; ἐπεὶ  
|voke, annoy |validity

|drive home; land ἔν πόλιν, |send; (mid) summon ἵέννεσιν πρὸς

ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενί πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς

χείρας ἐλθεῖν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρῳ ἵεναι ἤθελε, πρὶν ἢ γυνή

αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστεις ἔλαβε.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ |associate with, ἀλλήλοις, Σύννεσις  
|meet, have sex

μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν |army

Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ |honored,  
|precious

ἵππον |gold-bridled καὶ |pliant; type χρυσοῦν καὶ |armlet, καὶ  
|of necklace |anklet

|Persian χρυσοῦν καὶ |equipment ἑρσικὴν, καὶ τὴν χώραν  
|short

|sword |no more |make prey of τὰ δὲ |carry off, seize |slave ἥν

που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, |receive, recover,  
|take aside, cut off

### 1.3

|there, here ἔμεινεν ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας ἑκοσιν· οἱ

γὰρ |soldier, οὐκ ἔφασαν ἵεναι τοῦ |forward, |guess, observe, be suspi-  
|mercenary |in the |cious of  
|future;  
|far

they numbered one hundred hoplites; and when the rest arrived, being in a fury at the destruction of their fellow soldiers, they vented their spleen by pillaging the city of Tarsus and the palace to boot. Now when Cyrus had marched into the city, he sent for Syennesis to come to him; but the latter replied that he had never yet put himself into the hands of any one who was his superior, nor was he willing to accede to the proposal of Cyrus now; until, in the end, his wife persuaded him, and he accepted pledges of good faith. After this they met, and Syennesis gave Cyrus large sums in aid of his army; while Cyrus presented him with the customary royal gifts—to wit, a horse with a gold bit, a necklace of gold, a gold bracelet, and a gold scimitar, a Persian dress, and lastly, the exemption of his territory from further pillage, with the privilege of taking back the slaves that had been seized, wherever they might chance to come upon them.

### 1.3

At Tarsus Cyrus and his army halted for twenty days; the soldiers refusing to advance further, since the suspicion ripened in their minds, that the expedition was in reality

*vocabulary*

**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy  
**βιάζω** use force on, violate  
**βιάω** use force against, overcome  
**δακρύω** weep  
**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste  
**δαρεικός** Persian coin  
**εἴτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐκφεύγω** flee from, escape ~fugitive  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἐνοικέω** dwell in  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**καθηδουπαθέω** squander in luxury  
**καταπετρόω** stone someone  
**κατατίθημι** put down, deposit, lay

aside ~thesis  
**μισθόω** rent out; (pass) be hired  
**μυρίος** (ἰ) 10,000 ~myriad  
**προΐημι** send forth, abandon  
**σιωπάω** be silent  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
 ~demagogue  
**τιμάω** (ἰ) honor, exalt  
**τιμωρέω** (ἰ) (+dat) take vengeance,  
 punish; aid one who has been attacked  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote

γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἵναι· μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἵναι· οἱ δ' αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου, ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιτο προΐέναι. Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, ὕστερον δ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον ἐστῶς· οἱ δὲ ὀρώντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

«Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο καὶ με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα ἐτίμησε καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε δαρεικούς· οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ καθηδυνάθησα, ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἔδαπάνων. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐπολέμησα, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐτιμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς ἐξελαύνων βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας Ἑλλήνας τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ



γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἰέναι· |rent out; (pass)Ὶ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ  
 |be hired  
 ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ |soldier,  
 |mercenary  
 |βιάζω?: use force on; ὃν αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ |beast of burden  
 |βιάζω?: use force on  
 τὰ ἐκείνου, ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο |send forth, abandon, ἄος δὲ τότε  
 μὲν μικρὸν |flee μὴ |stone someone , ὕστερον δ' ἐπεὶ  
 ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, |join ἐκκλησίαν  
 τῶν αὐτοῦ |soldier,  
 |mercenary καὶ πρῶτον μὲν |weep πολὺν  
 χρόνον ἐστῶς· οἱ δὲ ὁρῶντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ |be silent |then, therefore,  
 |next  
 δὲ ἔλεξε |such  
 «Ἄνδρες |soldier,  
 |mercenary , μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω  
 τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο  
 καί με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα |honor  
 καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε |Persian coin οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν οὐκ εἰς  
 τὸ ἴδιον |put down ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ |squander in luxury ἄλλ' εἰς  
 ὑμᾶς |spend, con- καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾶκας  
 |sume, waste  
 ἐπολέμησα, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος |take vengeance, μεθ'  
 |punish, aid  
 ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς |drive out βουλομένους  
 |take away τοὺς |dwell in |Greek τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ

directed against the king; and as they insisted, they had not engaged their services for that object. Clearchus set the example of trying to force his men to continue their march; but he had no sooner started at the head of his troops than they began to pelt him and his baggage train, and Clearchus had a narrow escape of being stoned to death there and then. Later on, when he perceived that force was useless, he summoned an assembly of his own men; and for a long while he stood and wept, while the men gazed in silent astonishment. At last he spoke as follows:

«Fellow soldiers, do not marvel that I am sorely distressed on account of the present troubles. Cyrus has been no ordinary friend to me. When I was in banishment he honoured me in various ways, and made me also a present of ten thousand darics. These I accepted, but not to lay them up for myself for private use; not to squander them in pleasure, but to expend them on yourselves. And, first of all, I went to war with the Thracians, and with you to aid, I wreaked vengeance on them in behalf of Hellas; driving them out of the Chersonese, when they wanted to deprive its Hellenic inhabitants of their lands. But as soon as Cyrus summoned me, I took you

*vocabulary***ἀλέξω** ward off; aid**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**Ἕλλην** Greek**ἐρῆμος** empty**ὅπη** wherever, however**ὅπου** where**προδίδωμι** betray**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

**συμπορεύομαι** proceed together,

assemble ~pierce

**τίμιος** honored, precious**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy**φίλιος** friendly**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie

~pseudo-

**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμεν, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοίην αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα τῇ Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρήσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνον ψευσάμενον μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα, αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. καὶ οὔποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδείς ὥς ἐγὼ Ἑλλήνας ἀγαγὼν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς τοὺς Ἑλλήνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἰλόμην, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔψομαι καὶ ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ᾧ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὧν οὐκ ἂν ἰκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὔτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὔτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. ὥς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος ὅπη ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς οὔτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε.»

Ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἳ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ βασιλέα

δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμεν, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο

|help, be useful'. ὃν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ

δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε |proceed together, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι ἢ  
|assemble

ὑμᾶς |betray τῇ Κύρου |friendly, ῥῆσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνον

|be false, deceive; θ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω  
|(mid) to lie

οὐκ οἶδα, αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅ τι ἂν

δέη πείσομαι. καὶ οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ |Greek

ἀγαγὼν εἰς τοὺς |non-Greek, |betray τοὺς |Greek τὴν

τῶν |non-Greek φιλίαν εἰλόμην, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐ

θέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔψομαι καὶ ὅ τι ἂν δέη

πείσομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ

φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι

|honored where ἂν ὦ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὣν οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς οἶμαι  
|precious

εἶναι οὐτ' ἂν φίλον |help, be useful'. ἂν ἐχθρὸν |ward off; aid

ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος |wherever, αἱ ὑμεῖς οὕτω τὴν γνώμην  
|however

ἔχετε. »

Ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ |soldier, οἳ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ οἱ  
|mercenary

ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ βασιλέα

with me and set out, so that, if my benefactor had any need of me, I might requite him for the good treatment I myself had received at his hands.... But since you are not minded to continue the march with me, one of two things is left to me to do; either I must renounce you for the sake of my friendship with Cyrus, or I must go with you at the cost of deceiving him. Whether I am about to do right or not, I cannot say, but I choose yourselves; and, whatever betide, I mean to share your fate. Never shall it be said of me by any one that, having led Greek troops against the barbarians, I betrayed the Hellenes, and chose the friendship of the barbarian. No! since you do not choose to obey and follow me, I will follow after you. Whatever betide, I will share your fate. I look upon you as my country, my friends, my allies; with you I think I shall be honoured, wherever I be; without you I do not see how I can help a friend or hurt a foe. My decision is taken. Wherever you go, I go also."

Such were his words. But the soldiers, not only his own, but the rest also, when they heard what he said, and how he had scouted the idea of going

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**ἀφοράω** look away, at ~panorama  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**δισχίλιοι** 2000 ~kilo-  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
**λάθρα** secretly  
**λυπέω** (ῶ) annoy, distress  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon ~pomp  
**μισθοδότης** -ου (m, 1) paymaster  
**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in  
**σκευοφόρος** pack animal, porter  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station ~strategy  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
 ~demagogue  
**συνέπομαι** go along with ~sequel  
**σύνοιδα** know about someone; think proper  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-

πορεύεσθαι ἐπήνεσαν· παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. Κῦρος δὲ τούτοις ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλεάρχον· ὁ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ἤθελε, λάθρα δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων αὐτῷ ἄγγελον ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν ὥς καταστησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ δέον. μεταπέμπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς θ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

«Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ τὰ ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκείνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιῶται, ἐπεὶ γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι ἡμῖν μισθοδότης. ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἶδα· ὥστε καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον αἰσχυνόμενος ὅτι σύνοιδα ἑμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα καὶ δεδιὼς μὴ λαβὼν με δίκην ἐπιθῇ ὧν νομίζει ὑπ' ἐμοῦ





up to the great king's palace, expressed their approval; and more than two thousand men deserted Xenias and Pasion, and took their arms and baggage-train, and came and encamped with Clearchus. But Cyrus, in despair and vexation at this turn of affairs, sent for Clearchus. He refused to come; but, without the knowledge of the soldiers, sent a message to Cyrus, bidding him keep a good heart, for that all would arrange itself in the right way; and bade him keep on sending for him, whilst he himself refused to go. After that he got together his own men, with those who had joined him, and of the rest any who chose to come, and spoke as follows: «Fellow soldiers, it is clear that the relations of Cyrus to us are identical with ours to him. We are no longer his soldiers, since we have ceased to follow him; and he, on his side, is no longer our paymaster. He, however, no doubt considers himself wronged by us; and though he goes on sending for me, I cannot bring myself to go to him: for two reasons, chiefly from a sense of shame, for I am forced to admit to myself that I have altogether deceived him; but partly, too, because I am afraid of his seizing me and inflicting a penalty on the wrongs which he conceives that I have

*vocabulary*

**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**αὐτόματος** self-willed, accidental  
 ~after  
**ἐγκέλευστος** urged on  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῥ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station

**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman  
**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo  
**καθεύδω** lie down  
**ναυτικός** of ships ~navy  
**ὄφελος** -εος (n, 3) a use, a help  
**προσποιέω** give over to; pretend  
 ~poet  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far  
**σκεπτέος** thing to consider, one who  
 must consider  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptic  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate

ἡδικῆσθαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρα εἶναι ἡμῖν καθεύδειν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ βουλευέσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως γε μένομεν αὐτοῦ σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξομεν· ἄνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε ιδιώτου ὄφελος οὐδέν. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾗ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾗ, ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἵππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν ἣν πάντες ὁμοίως ὀρώμεν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ καθῆσθαι. ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὅ τι τις γιγνώσκει ἄριστον εἶναι.» ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίνωσκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκέλευστοι, ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἴη ἡ ἀπορία ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι. εἷς δὲ δὴ εἶπε προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν ὥς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατηγοὺς μὲν ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους ὥς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος

ἡδικῆσθαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρα εἶναι ἡμῖν |lie down  
οὐδ' |disregard ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ βουλευέσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ  
ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως γε μένομεν αὐτοῦ σκεπτέον  
μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως |safe, easy, steady, μενούμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη  
|careful  
δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως |safe, easy, steady, ἀπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ  
|careful  
|fit, suitable ἕξομεν' |away from; not hav- οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε  
|ing; not needing  
|private; a|a use, a help' Ἦν. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος ὧ ἂν  
|layman  
φίλος ἦ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ὧ ἂν πολέμιος ἦ, ἔχει  
δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ |of horses καὶ |of ships ἣν πάντες  
ὁμοίως ὀρώμεν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ |forward, in the fu-  
|ture; far  
δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ καθῆσθαι. ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὅ τι τις  
γινώσκει ἄριστον εἶναι.» ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ |self-willed,  
|accidental  
λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίνωσκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου |urged on  
|display, exhibit οἷα εἶη ἡ |diffi- |away from; not hav- ὥμης καὶ  
|culty, |ing; not needing  
μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι. εἰς |bottle- |give over to; pre- |'push on,' get going,  
|neck |tend |hurry  
ὥς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατηγούς μὲν  
ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους ὥς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος

done him. In my opinion, then, this is no time for us to go to sleep and forget all about ourselves, rather it is high time to deliberate on our next move; and as long as we do remain here, we had better bethink us how we are to abide in security; or, if we are resolved to turn our backs at once, what will be the safest means of retreat; and, further, how we are to procure supplies, for without supplies there is no profit whatsoever in the general or the private soldier. The man with whom we have to deal is an excellent friend to his friends, but a very dangerous enemy to his foes. And he is backed by a force of infantry and cavalry and ships such as we all alike very well see and know, since we can hardly be said to have posted ourselves at any great distance from him. If, then, any one has a suggestion to make, now is the time to speak.” With these words he ceased.

Then various speakers stood up; some of their own motion to propound their views; others inspired by Clearchus to dilate on the hopeless difficulty of either staying, or going back without the goodwill of Cyrus. One of these, in particular, with a make-believe of anxiety to commence the homeward march without further pause, called upon them instantly to choose other generals, if Clearchus were not himself prepared to lead them back: «Let them at

*vocabulary*

**ἀγοράζω** do commerce ~agora  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἄκρᾱ** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκρῃ** at the edge, extreme  
**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἀναρπάζω** carry off ~harpoon  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float  
**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek  
**ἐνοράω** look at, notice something in  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὑ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**εὐήθεια** goodheartedness, silliness  
**εὐήθης** good-hearted; simple  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**ἡγεμῶν** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,

chief ~hegemony  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**λυμᾰίνομαι** (ὑ) abuse, violate,  
 desecrate  
**πράξις** -εως (f) result, business  
 ~practice  
**προκαταλαμβάνω** seize beforehand  
 ~epilepsy  
**στόλος** expedition, equipment, forces  
 ~apostle  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατηγία** office of command, strategy  
 ~strategy  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**φθάζω** do first, outstrip  
**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip  
**φίλιος** friendly

ἀπάγειν· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἀγοράζεσθαι ἢ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ στρατεύματι καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· ἐλθόντας δὲ Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῶ ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κῦρον ὅστις διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας ἀπάξει. ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῶ, συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ καὶ προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι μήτε Κῦρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες, ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον. «Ὡς μὲν στρατηγήσοντα ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· ὥς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἔλησθε πείσομαι ἢ δυνατόν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῇτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων.»

Μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στόλον Κύρου ποιουμένου, ἐπιδεικνὺς δὲ ὡς εὐήθες εἶη ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λυμαινόμεθα τὴν πρᾶξιν. «εἰ δὲ



|lead away, back<sup>7</sup> |fit, suitable|do commerce ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῷ  
|non-Greek |army καὶ |pack up ἐλθόντας δὲ  
Κῦρον|ask for πλοῖα, ὡς|sail away εἰς δὲ μὴ διδῶ ταῦτα,  
|leader |ask for Ξῦρον ὅστις διὰ |friendly τῆς χώρας ἀπάξει.  
εἰς δὲ μὴδὲ |leader διδῶ, |gather, assemble τὴν ταχίστην,  
πέμψαι δὲ καὶ |seize beforehand τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ  
φθάσωσι μήτε Κῦρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες |seize, understand, catch, overtake;  
|(mp) happen  
πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν |carry off οὗτος  
μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον.  
«Ὡς μὲν |be a general ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν |office of com-  
mand, strategy  
μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ |look at, notice, μοι τοῦτο οὐ  
something in  
ποιητέον· ὡς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἔλησθε πείσομαι ἢ δυνατὸν  
μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῇτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι ὡς τις καὶ  
ἄλλος μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων.»

Μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, |display, μὲν τὴν |goodheartedness,  
|exhibit silliness  
τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα |ask for ἐλεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν |expedition, equip-  
ment, forces  
Κύρου ποιουμένου, |display, δὲ ὡς |good-hearted leader  
|exhibit simple  
|ask for παρὰ τούτου ᾧ |abuse, violate, desce- result, «εἰ δὲ  
|crate business

once purchase supplies” (the market being in the heart of the Asiatic camp), «let them pack up their baggage: let them,” he added, «go to Cyrus and ask for some ships in order to return by sea: if he refused to give them ships, let them demand of him a guide to lead them back through a friendly district; and if he would not so much as give them a guide, they could but put themselves, without more ado, in marching order, and send on a detachment to occupy the pass—before Cyrus and the Cilicians, whose property,” the speaker added, «we have so plentifully pillaged, can anticipate us.” Such were the remarks of that speaker; he was followed by Clearchus, who merely said: «As to my acting personally as general at this season, pray do not propose it: I can see numerous obstacles to my doing so. Obedience, in the fullest, I can render to the man of your choice, that is another matter: and you shall see and know that I can play my part, under command, with the best of you.”

After Clearchus another spokesman stood up, and proceeded to point out the simplicity of the speaker, who proposed to ask for vessels, just as if Cyrus were minded to renounce the expedition and sail back again. «And let me further point out,” he said, «what a simple-minded notion it is to beg a guide of the very man whose designs

*vocabulary*

**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme  
**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**δεῦρο** here, come here!  
**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board ~basis  
**ἐπικίνδυνος** (ῥ) in danger, dangerous  
**ἐπίπονός** of/with pain, toil ~osteopenia  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἡγεμῶν** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,

chief ~hegemony  
**καταδύω** enter, sink  
**κωλύω** (ῥ) hinder, prevent  
**ὅθεν** whence  
**ὀκνέω** shrink from, hesitate; worry  
**παραπλήσιος** similar to  
**πραΐξις** -εως (f) result, business  
 ~practice  
**πρόθυμος** (ῥ) willing, eager ~fume  
**προκαταλαμβάνω** seize beforehand  
 ~epilepsy  
**συναναβαίνω** go up with ~basis  
**τριήρης** trireme ~row  
**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy  
**φίλιος** friendly  
**φλυαρία** nonsense

καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν Κῦρος διδῶ, τί κωλύει  
καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν Κῦρον προκαταλαβεῖν; ἐγὼ  
γὰρ ὁκνοίην μὲν ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη,  
μὴ ἡμᾶς ταῖς τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ  
ἡγεμόνι ὃν δοίη ἔπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ ἔσται  
ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπιὼν Κύρου λαθεῖν  
αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν. ἀλλ' ἐγὼ φημι  
ταῦτα μὲν φλυαρίας εἶναι· δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἄνδρας ἐλθόντας  
πρὸς Κῦρον οἷτινες ἐπιτήδευοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν  
ἐκεῖνον τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἢ πρᾶξις  
ἢ παραπλησία οἷαπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρήτο τοῖς ξένοις,  
ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ  
συναναβάντων· ἐὰν δὲ μείζων ἢ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν  
φαίνεται καὶ ἐπιπονωτέρα καὶ ἐπικινδυνότερα, ἀξιοῦν ἢ  
πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φιλίαν ἀφιέναι·  
οὕτῳ γὰρ καὶ ἐπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι  
ἐποίμεθα καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν· ὅ τι δ' ἂν  
πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας

καὶ τῷ |leader πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν Κῦρος διδῷ, τί |hinder,  
 |prevent  
 καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν Κῦρον |seize beforehand , ἐγὼ  
 γὰρ |hesitate; μὲν ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα |step on, board ἡμῖν δοίη,  
 |worry  
 μὴ ἡμᾶς ταῖς |trireme καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ  
 |leader ὃν δοίη ἔπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ |whence κ' ἔσται  
 ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπιὼν Κύρου λαθεῖν  
 αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν. ἀλλ' ἐγὼ φημι  
 ταῦτα μὲν |nonsense εἶναι· δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἄνδρας ἐλθόντας  
 πρὸς Κῦρον οἷτινες |fit, suitable σὺν Κλεάρχῳ |ask  
 ἐκεῖνον τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἡ |result,  
 |business  
 ἡ |similar to οἷαπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρήτο τοῖς ξένοις,  
 ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ  
 |go up with ἐὰν δὲ μείζων ἡ |result, τῆς πρόσθεν  
 |business  
 φαίνεται καὶ |of/with pain, toil . . . |in danger, dangerous οὖν ἡ  
 πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἡ πεισθέντα πρὸς φίλιαν ἀφίεμαι·  
 οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἐπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ |willing,  
 |eager  
 ἐποίμεθα καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίομεν· ὅ τι δ' ἂν  
 πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ |announce, or-|here, come here! ἰκούσαντας  
 |der, promise

we are marring. If we can trust any guide whom Cyrus may vouchsafe to us, why not order Cyrus at once to occupy the pass on our behoof? For my part, I should think twice before I set foot on any ships that he might give us, for fear lest he should sink them with his men of war; and I should equally hesitate to follow any guide of his: he might lead us into some place out of which we should find it impossible to escape. I should much prefer, if I am to return home against the will of Cyrus at all, to give him the slip, and so begone: which indeed is impossible. But these schemes are simply nonsensical. My proposal is that a deputation of fit persons, with Clearchus, should go to Cyrus: let them go to Cyrus and ask him: what use he proposes to make of us? and if the business is at all similar to that on which he once before employed a body of foreigners—let us by all means follow: let us show that we are the equals of those who accompanied him on his march up formerly. But if the design should turn out to be of larger import than the former one—involving more toil and more danger—we should ask him, either to give us good reasons for following his lead, or else consent to send us away into a friendly country. In this way, whether we follow him, we shall do so as friends, and with heart and soul, or whether we go back, we shall do so in security. The answer to this shall be reported to us here, and when we have heard it, we will advise

*vocabulary*

**ἄγγέλλω** carry a message, announce  
 ~angel  
**αἰρετός** takeable, desirable ~heresy  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at  
 some distance  
**δαρεικός** Persian coin  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
 wind  
**ἡμιόλιος** 1.5 times ~hemisphere  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless

**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
 ca. 5 km  
**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square  
 ~plethora  
**προσαιτέω** demand as well ~etiology  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**ὕπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do  
 ~ischemia  
**ὕποψία** suspicion ~panorama  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon  
**φανερόω** demonstrate ~photon  
**χρήζω** need ~chresard  
**ψάρος** starling

πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι.»

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμπουσιν οἱ ἡρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόμαν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κὰν μὲν ἦ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρήζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, «ἦν δὲ φύγη, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα.» ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἵρετοὶ ἀγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγει πρὸς βασιλέα, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεσθαι. προσαιτοῦσι δὲ μισθόν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὗ πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδαρειακά τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἐν τῷ γε φανερώ.

#### 1.4

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος τρία πλέθρα.



πρὸς ταῦτα βουλεύεσθαι.»

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ  
πέμπουσιν οἱ <sup>|ask</sup> Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ <sup>|army</sup> ὁ  
δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόμαν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ  
τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, <sup>|ward off, drive off, re-cottage; post</sup>  
<sup>|frain, be at some dis-</sup>  
<sup>|tance</sup> πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· καὶ μὲν ἦ ἐκεῖ,  
τῇν δίκην ἔφη <sup>|need</sup> ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, «ἦν δὲ φύγη, ἡμεῖς  
ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα.» ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα  
οἱ <sup>|takeable, |carry a message, ân-|soldier,</sup> τοῖς δὲ <sup>|suspicion</sup>  
<sup>|desirable |nounce</sup> <sup>|mercenary</sup>  
μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγει πρὸς βασιλέα, <sup>|anyway, nevertheless</sup> εἶσθαι.  
<sup>|demand as well</sup> ὁ δὲ Κῦρος <sup>|reward,</sup> <sup>|1.5 times</sup>  
<sup>|wages</sup> <sup>|agree</sup>  
πᾶσι δώσειν οὐ πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ <sup>|Persian coin.</sup> ρία  
ἡμιδαρειακὰ τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ <sup>|soldier,</sup> ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέα  
<sup>|mercenary</sup>  
ἄγοι οὐδὲ <sup>|there, here</sup> ἔκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἐν τῷ γε φανερώ.

#### 1.4

<sup>|thence</sup> <sup>|drive out</sup> <sup>|cottage; post</sup> ὅσο <sup>|ca. 5 km</sup> δέκα ἐπὶ  
τὸν <sup>|starling</sup> ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ <sup>|width; (caps)</sup>30 <sup>me-</sup>  
<sup>|the east wind</sup> <sup>|ters or its</sup>  
<sup>|square</sup>

as to our best course.”

This resolution was carried, and they chose and sent a deputation with Clearchus, who put to Cyrus the questions which had been agreed upon by the army. Cyrus replied as follows: That he had received news that Abrocomas, an enemy of his, was posted on the Euphrates, twelve stages off; his object was to march against this aforesaid Abrocomas: and if he were still there, he wished to inflict punishment on him, «or if he be fled” (so the reply concluded), «we will there deliberate on the best course.” The deputation received the answer and reported it to the soldiers. The suspicion that he was leading them against the king was not dispelled; but it seemed best to follow him. They only demanded an increase of pay, and Cyrus promised to give them half as much again as they had hitherto received—that is to say, a daric and a half a month to each man, instead of a daric. Was he really leading them to attack the king? Not even at this moment was any one apprised of the fact, at any rate in any open and public manner.

#### 1.4

From this point he marched two stages—ten parasangs—to the river Psarus, which is

*vocabulary*

Ἕλλην Greek

ἐνταῦθα there, here

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic

ἑπτακόσιοι 700

ἔσχατος farthest, last

εὐδαίμων blessed with a good genius

εὐρος -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
wind

μετάπεμπτος sent for

μισθοφόρος mercenary

ναύαρχος admiral

οἰκέω inhabit ~economics

οἰκουμένη inhabited

ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman ~hoplite

ὀρμέω be anchored

παρασάγγης -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
ca. 5 km

πεντεκαίδεκα 15

πύλη gate ~Thermopylae

σκηνή tent; stage

στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)

στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters

σταθμός cottage; post

στρατηγέω be a general

συμπολεμέω join in war

συστρατεύω join in an expedition

τετρακόσιοι 400

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος στάδιον. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα εἰς Ἴσους, τῆς Κιλικίας ἐσχάτην πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρῳ παρήσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς ναύαρχος Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἠγείτο δ' αὐταῖς Ταμῶς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναὺς ἑτέρας Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον, ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει φίλη ἦν, καὶ συνεπολέμει Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτόν. παρήν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, μετάπεμptos ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἐπτακοσίους ἔχων ὀπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρῳ. αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμουν παρὰ τὴν Κύρου σκηνὴν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρὰ Ἀβροκόμα μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ Κύρον τετρακόσιοι ὀπλῖται καὶ συνεστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ βασιλέα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ πύλας τῆς

|thence |drive out |cottage; post. α |ca. 5 km πέντε ἐπὶ

τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ |width; -(caps) the|thence  
|east wind

|drive out |cottage; post. ὕο |ca. 5 km |15 εἰς

Ἰσσοῦς, τῆς Κιλικίας |farthest πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ

οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ |blessed with a|there, here ὕμειναν  
|good genius

ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρω παρήσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου

νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς |admiral

Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἡγείτο δ' αὐταῖς Ταμὼς

Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς ἑτέρας Κύρου πέντε καὶ

εἴκοσιν, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον, ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει φίλη

ἦν, καὶ |join in war Κύρω πρὸς αὐτόν. παρήν δὲ καὶ

Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, |sent for

ὑπὸ Κύρου, |700 ἔχων ὀπλίτας, ὧν |be a general

παρὰ Κύρω. αἱ δὲ νῆες |be anchored παρὰ τὴν Κύρου

|tent; |there, here αὶ οἱ παρὰ Ἀβροκόμα |mercenary  
|stage

|Greek ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ Κῦρον |400

ὀπλῖται καὶ |join in an expedition ἐπὶ βασιλέα. |thence

|drive out |cottage; post. - |ca. 5 km πέντε ἐπὶ πύλας τῆς

two hundred feet broad, and from the Psarus he marched a single stage—five parasangs—to Issi, the last city in Cilicia. It lies on the seaboard—a prosperous, large and flourishing town. Here they halted three days, and here Cyrus was joined by his fleet. There were thirty-five ships from Peloponnesus, with the Lacedaemonian admiral Pythagoras on board. These had been piloted from Ephesus by Tamos the Egyptian, who himself had another fleet of twenty-five ships belonging to Cyrus. These had formed Tamos's blockading squadron at Miletus, when that city sided with Tissaphernes; he had also used them in other military services rendered to Cyrus in his operations against that satrap. There was a third officer on board the fleet, the Lacedaemonian Cheirisophus, who had been sent for by Cyrus, and had brought with him seven hundred hoplites, over whom he was to act as general in the service of Cyrus. The fleet lay at anchor opposite Cyrus's tent. Here too another reinforcement presented itself. This was a body of four hundred hoplites, Hellenic mercenaries in the service of Abrocomas, who deserted him for Cyrus, and joined in the campaign against the king.

From Issi, he marched a single stage—five

*vocabulary*

**ἀναστρέφω** act: overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy

**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans) ride away

**ἀποβιβάζω** put ashore, put off

**βιάζω** use force on, violate

**βιάω** use force against, overcome

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic

**ἔσωθεν** inside, from inside

**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east wind

**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station

**ἡλίβατος** epithet of stone

**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; be proper

**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon ~pomp

**μυριάς** -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad

**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ῥ, m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman ~hoplite

**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km

**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape

**πάροδος** (f) detour, side way, mountain pass

**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified

**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square ~plethora

**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae

**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat

**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)

**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters

**σταθμός** cottage; post

**στενός** narrow

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**στρατιά** army ~strategy

**ὑπερθεν** from above

**ὑπερτίθμι** hand over; excel; defer

**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch ~phylactery

Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα δύο τείχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν τὸ πρὸ τῆς Κιλικίας Συνέννεσις εἶχε καὶ Κιλικίων φυλακή, τὸ δὲ ἔξω τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ φυλάττειν. διὰ μέσου δὲ ῥεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα, εὖρος πλέθρου. ἅπαν δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν στάδιοι τρεῖς· καὶ παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν βία· ἦν γὰρ ἡ πάροδος στενὴ καὶ τὰ τείχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθήκοντα, ὑπερθεῖν δ' ἦσαν πέτραι ἡλίβατοι· ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς τείχεσιν ἀμφοτέροις ἐφειστήκεσαν πύλαι. ταύτης ἔνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο, ὅπως ὀπλίτας ἀποβιβάσειεν εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν, καὶ βιασόμενος τοὺς πολεμίους εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις, ὅπερ ᾤετο ποιήσῃν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμαν, ἔχοντα πολὺν στρατεύμα. Ἀβροκόμας δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης παρὰ βασιλέα ἀπήλαυνεν, ἔχων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα μυριάδας στρατιᾶς.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας



Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα δύο τείχη, καὶ  
τὸ μὲν |inside, from inside τῆς Κιλικίας Συνέννεσις εἶχε καὶ  
Κιλικίων |guard, prison, watch φυλάττειν. διὰ μέσου δὲ ῥεῖ τούτων  
ἐλέγετο |guard, prison, watch ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα, |width; 30 me- ἅπαν δὲ τὸ μέσον  
τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν στάδιοι |caps) ters or its τρεῖς καὶ |the square |pass, escape οὐκ ἦν βία·  
ἦν γὰρ ἡ |detour, narrow καὶ τὰ τείχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν  
|come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; |epithet of stone δὲ τοῖς  
|be proper  
τείχεσιν ἀμφοτέροις |set; (mp) |gate ταύτης ἔνεκα  
τῆς |detour, pass |direct, stop |come/be near, |send; (mid) summon |hoplite, heavy in-  
|put ashore, put off |fantryman  
-ω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν, καὶ βιασόμενος  
τοὺς πολεμίους εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις |gate  
ὅπερ ᾔετο ποιήσῃν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμαν, ἔχοντα πολὺ  
|army Ἀβροκόμας δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ  
ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, |act: overturn; mid: |οινίκης  
|find oneself in  
παρὰ βασιλέα |expel, exclude, ward off; s ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα  
|(intrans) ride away  
|countless, |army  
|myriad  
|thence |drive out διὰ Συρίας |cottage; post - |ca. 5 km

parasangs—to the gates of Cilicia and Syria. This was a double fortress: the inner and nearer one, which protects Cilicia, was held by Syennesis and a garrison of Cilicians; the outer and further one, protecting Syria, was reported to be garrisoned by a body of the king's troops. Through the gap between the two fortresses flows a river named the Carsus, which is a hundred feet broad, and the whole space between was scarcely more than six hundred yards. To force a passage here would be impossible, so narrow was the pass itself, with the fortification walls stretching down to the sea, and precipitous rocks above; while both fortresses were furnished with gates. It was the existence of this pass which had induced Cyrus to send for the fleet, so as to enable him to lead a body of hoplites inside and outside the gates; and so to force a passage through the enemy, if he were guarding the Syrian gate, as he fully expected to find Abrocomas doing with a large army. This, however, Abrocomas had not done; but as soon as he learnt that Cyrus was in Cilicia, he had turned round and made his exit from Phoenicia, to join the king with an army amounting, as report said, to three hundred thousand men.

From this point

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float  
**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free  
**αὐτόθι** on the spot  
**ἀφανής** unseen, occult, obscure  
**δειλός** wretched, poor, cowardly  
 ~Deimos  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board ~basis  
**ἐμπόριον** immigrant, metic, trading  
 post  
**ἐμπόριος** immigrant, metic, trading  
 post  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

~station

**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**κῦρος -εος** (n, 3) authority; validity  
**ξενία** hospitality ~xenophobe  
**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**οἰκουμένη** inhabited  
**οἰκτείρω** pity  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀλκός -δος** (f, 3) towed merchant ship  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὀρμέω** be anchored  
**στρατιώτης -ου** (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συγχαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**τριήρης** trireme ~row  
**φιλοτιμέομαι** (ἱ) be ambitious  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

πέντε εἰς Μυρίανδον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ· ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὥρμουν αὐτόθι ὀλκάδες πολλαί. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτά· καὶ Ξενίας ὁ Ἄρκας στρατηγὸς καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς ἐμβάντες εἰς πλοῖον καὶ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια ἐνθέμενοι ἀπέπλευσαν, ὥς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν φιλοτιμηθέντες ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας ὥς ἀπιόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα εἶα Κῦρος τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, διῆλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκει αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν ἠύχοντο ὥς δειλοὺς ὄντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, οἱ δ' ᾤκτιρον εἰ ἀλώσοιντο. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπεν·

«Ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων. ἀλλ' εὖ γε μέντοι ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασιν· οἶδα γὰρ ὅπη οἴχονται· οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγασιν· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον· ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὥς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῇ

πέντε εἰς Μυρίανδον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινίκων ἐπὶ  
 τῇ θαλάττῃ· ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ |area; down-|be an-|on the spot  
 |wards |chored  
 |towed |πολλαί. |there, here...|εινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ· καὶ Ξενίας  
 |merchant  
 |ship  
 οὗ Ἀρκὰς στρατηγὸς καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς |step on, board  
 εἰς πλοῖον καὶ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια |load; mp-|sail away  
 |take to heart  
 ὥς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν |be ambitious ὅτι τοὺς  
 |soldier, αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας ὥς  
 |mercenary  
 ἀπιόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα  
 εἶα |authority; ἔν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν |unseen, oc-  
 |validity |cult, obscure  
 |pierce, ἡ λόγος ὅτι διώκει αὐτοὺς Κῦρος |trireme καὶ οἱ μὲν  
 |traverse  
 ἠύχοντο ὥς |wretched ἔντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, οἱ δ' ὥκτιρον  
 εἰ |be captured Κῦρος δὲ |call together τοὺς στρατηγοὺς  
 εἶπεν·  
 «|leave behind, fail ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων. ἀλλ' εὖ γε  
 μέντοι ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὔτε |escape οἶδα γὰρ |wherever,  
 |come, go οὔτε |avoid, escape, go ἔχω γὰρ |trireme ὥστε  
 |free  
 ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον· ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε  
 αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὥς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῇ

Cyrus pursued his march, through Syria a single stage—five parasangs—to Myriandus, a city inhabited by Phoenicians, on the sea-coast. This was a commercial port, and numerous merchant vessels were riding at anchor in the harbour. Here they halted seven days, and here Xenias the Arcadian general, and Pasion the Megarian got on board a trader, and having stowed away their most valuable effects, set sail for home; most people explained the act as the outcome of a fit of jealousy, because Cyrus had allowed Clearchus to retain their men, who had deserted to him, in hopes of returning to Hellas instead of marching against the king; when the two had so vanished, a rumour spread that Cyrus was after them with some ships of war, and some hoped the cowards might be caught, others pitied them, if that should be their fate.

But Cyrus summoned the generals and addressed them: «Xenias and Pasion,” he said, «have taken leave of us; but they need not flatter themselves that in so doing they have stolen into hiding. I know where they are gone; nor will they owe their escape to speed; I have men of war to capture their craft, if I like. But heaven help me! if I mean to pursue them: never shall it be said of me, that I turn people to account as long as they stay with me, but as soon as they are minded to be off, I seize and maltreat them, and strip them of their wealth. Not so! let

*vocabulary*

**ἄθυμος** (ῥ) having low morale ~fume  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy  
**ἀποσυλάω** (ῥ) despoil, rob  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
 wind  
**ζώνη** girdle; waist, loins ~zone  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**ἰχθυάω** to fish  
**ἰχθύς** -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology  
**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
 ca. 5 km

**περιστερά** dove  
**πηγή** headwaters, fountain  
**πηγός** stout, mighty  
**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square  
 ~plethora  
**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of  
 ~plethora  
**πρόθυμος** (ῥ) willing, eager ~fume  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνόω** camp  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στερέω** steal, take  
**στέρομαι** lack, lose  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
**συμπορεύομαι** proceed together,  
 assemble ~pierce  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**φρουρέω** keep watch

τις χρώμαι, ἐπειδὴν δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβὼν καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσυλῶ. ἀλλὰ ἴτωσαν, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. καίτοι ἔχω γε αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι φρουρούμενα· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τούτων στερήσονται, ἀλλ' ἀπολήψονται τῆς πρόσθεν ἔνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ ἀρετῆς.»

Καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ ἀθυμότερος ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδιον καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κύρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἵκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων μεγάλων καὶ πραέων, οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἀδικεῖν οὐκ εἶων, οὐδὲ τὰς περιστερὰς. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνον Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν εἰς ζώνην δεδομέναι.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Δάρδατος ποταμοῦ,



τις χρώμαι, |when, δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, |seize, capture; ἔλ  
|after |understand

αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσυλῶ. ἀλλὰ

ἴτωσαν, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰςὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ

ἐκείνους. |and yet; and in αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν  
|fact; although

Τράλλεσι |keep watch ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τούτων στερήσονται,

ἀλλ' |receive, recover, ἵς πρόσθεν ἔνεκα περὶ ἐμέ |excellence  
|take aside, cut off

Καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ |Greek , εἴ τις καὶ

|having low morale .ρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου

|excel- |sweet καὶ |willing, eager |proceed together,  
|lence |assemble

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος |drive out |cottage; post |four

|ca. 5 km εἵκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ

|width; |30 meters|full, complete; ὕων μεγάλων καὶ πραέων,  
(caps) |or its square(+gen) full of

the east  
wind οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἀδικεῖν οὐκ εἶων, οὐδὲ τὰς

|dove αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνον Παρυσάτιδος

ἦσαν εἰς |girdle; δεδομένοι.  
|waist

|thence |drive out |cottage; post πέντε |ca. 5 km

τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Δάρδατος ποταμοῦ,

them go with the consciousness that our behaviour to them is better than theirs to us. And yet I have their children and wives safe under lock and key in Tralles; but they shall not be deprived even of these. They shall receive them back in return for their former goodness to me.” So he spoke, and the Hellenes, even those who had been out of heart at the thought of marching up the country, when they heard of the nobleness of Cyrus, were happier and more eager to follow him on his path.

After this Cyrus marched onwards four stages—twenty parasangs—to the river Chalus. That river is a hundred feet broad, and is stocked with tame fish which the Syrians regard as gods, and will not suffer to be injured—and so too the pigeons of the place. The villages in which they encamped belonged to Parysatis, as part of her girdle money. From this point he marched on five stages—thirty parasangs—to the sources of the river Dardas,

*vocabulary*

**ἀναπειθω** (aor, plupf) seduce,  
persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,  
be confident in  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel  
**αὐτόθι** on the spot  
**βασίλεια** noblewoman  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**ἐκκόπτω** cut out, down, off  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελάυνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**εὐρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
wind  
**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic  
**κρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic  
**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon  
~pomp

**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo  
**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas  
**πάλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas  
**παράδεισος** park  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
ca. 5 km  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square  
~plethora  
**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl  
noun) 200 meters  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage

οὐ τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ Βελέσους βασιλεία τοῦ Συρίας ἄρξαντος, καὶ παράδεισος πάνυ μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὦραι φύουσι. Κῦρος δ' αὐτὸν ἐξέκοιψε καὶ τὰ βασιλεία κατέκαυσεν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων Θάψακος ὄνομα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε. καὶ Κῦρος μεταπεμφάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπείθειν ἔπεσθαι.

Οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότας κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἐὰν μή τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶ, ὥσπερ τοῖς προτέροις μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ

οὐ τὸ <sup>width; 30 meters</sup> <sup>(caps) or its</sup> <sup>there, here</sup> τὰ Βελέσους βασιλεια  
 τοῦ Σαρδάας <sup>the square</sup> ἀρξάντος, καὶ <sup>the east</sup> <sup>park</sup> πάνυ μέγας καὶ  
 καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὦραι <sup>produce, authority;</sup> <sup>beget; validity</sup> αὐτὸν  
<sup>cut out, down, off</sup> βασιλεια <sup>burn down</sup> <sup>clasp</sup> <sup>thence</sup> <sup>drive out</sup>  
<sup>cottage; post</sup> τρεῖς <sup>ca. 5 km</sup> <sup>15</sup> ἐπὶ τὸν  
 Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ <sup>width; four</sup> <sup>(caps)</sup> <sup>σταδίων</sup>  
 καὶ πόλις <sup>on the</sup> <sup>inhabit</sup> <sup>the east</sup> <sup>wind</sup> <sup>blessed with a</sup> <sup>good genius</sup>  
 ὄνομα. <sup>there, here</sup> μένειν ἡμέρας πέντε. καὶ Κῦρος  
<sup>send; (mid) summon</sup> ἔς στρατηγοὺς τῶν <sup>Greek</sup> ἔλεγεν  
 ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα·  
 καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς <sup>soldier,</sup> <sup>mercenary</sup> καὶ  
<sup>(aor, plupf) seduce, persuade; (mp, pf,</sup>  
<sup>aor ppl) trust, obey, be confident in</sup>  
 Οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν <sup>announce, or-</sup> <sup>der, promise</sup> ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ  
<sup>soldier,</sup> <sup>mercenary</sup> <sup>be violent, rage</sup> τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν  
 αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότας <sup>hide,</sup> <sup>cover</sup>, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν  
 ἰέναι, ἐὰν μή τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶ, ὥσπερ τοῖς  
 προτέροις μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ  
 Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ

which is a hundred feet broad. Here stood the palace of Belesys, the ruler of Syria, with its park—which was a very large and beautiful one, and full of the products of all the seasons in their course. But Cyrus cut down the park and burnt the palace. Thence he marched on three stages—fifteen parasangs—to the river Euphrates, which is nearly half a mile broad. A large and flourishing city, named Thapsacus, stands on its banks. Here they halted five days, and here Cyrus sent for the generals of the Hellenes, and told them that the advance was now to be upon Babylon, against the great king; he bade them communicate this information to the soldiers and persuade them to follow.

The generals called an assembly, and announced the news to the soldiers. The latter were indignant and angry with the generals, accusing them of having kept secret what they had long known; and refused to go, unless such a bribe of money were given them as had been given to their predecessors, when they went up with Cyrus to the court of his father, not as now to fight a battle, but on a peaceful errand—the visit of a

*vocabulary*

**αἷτιος** blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

**ἀποψηφίζομαι** vote against, acquit

**ἀργύριον** small coin

**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis

**Ἑλλην** Greek

**ἐντελής** complete, full

**ἐπάν** when, after

**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

~station

**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station

**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that

**μέχρι** as far as, until

**μισθός** reward, wages

**μνᾶ** mina

**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia

**πότερος** which, whichever of two

**πρόθυμος** (ὑ) willing, eager ~fume

**προτιμάω** (ἰ) prefer, pay attention to

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion

**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand;

submit to

**χωρίς** separately; except, other than

~heir

**ψηφίζω** count, vote

καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς Κύρου. ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελλον· ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστω δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὰν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦκωσι, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῇ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν πάλιν. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπίεσθη.

Μένων δὲ πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται, πότερον ἔψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὔ, συνέλεξε τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.

«Ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῇτε, οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτιμήσεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι; νῦν δέεται Κύρος ἔπεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ. ἦν μὲν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἔπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τοῦ διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὥς προθυμοτάτοις οὖσιν ὑμῖν χάριν εἴσεται Κύρος καὶ ἀποδώσει· ἐπίσταται δ' εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος· ἦν δὲ ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἅπμεν μὲν ἅπαντες



καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς Κύρον. ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ

|announce, or-    ὁ δ' |promise    ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστω δώσειν πέντε  
|der, promise

|small coin |mina    |when, ἵς Βαβυλῶνα ἤκωσι, καὶ τὸν |reward,  
|after    wages

|com-    |as far as, until    ἀστήσῃ τοὺς |Greek    εἰς Ἰωνίαν  
|plete,  
|full  
παλιν. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπέισθη.

Μένων δὲ πρὶν |visible,    τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι  
|conspicuous

|soldier,    |which,    ἔψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὐ, |collect,    τὸ  
|mercenary    |whichever    assemble

αὐτοῦ |army    |separately,    ἑξ-λὼν καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.  
|cept, other than

«Ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῇτε, οὔτε |encounter danger; (+inf) there is a  
|danger that

|work    τῶν ἄλλων πλέον |προτιμάω?:    |soldier,  
|prefer,    pay|mercenary

ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι; ἢ ὅτι δέχεται Κύρος  
|attention    to;  
|or    προτιμάω?:

ἔπεσθαι τοὺς |Greek    ἐπὶ βασιλείᾳ ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς  
|prefer,    pay  
|attention to

χρῆναι |pass over, cross    Ὑφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν |visible,    ...  
|conspicuous

ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι |Greek    ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ. ἦν μὲν γὰρ

|count, vote    ἔπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε |blameworthy; ἱρξάντες  
|the cause

τοῦ |pass over, cross    ὡς |willing, eager    οὓσιν ὑμῖν χάριν

εἴσεται Κύρος καὶ ἀποδώσει· ἐπίσταται δ' εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος·

ἦν δὲ |vote against, acquit    ἱ ἄλλοι, ἅπιμεν μὲν ἅπαντες

son to his father by invitation. The demand was reported to Cyrus by the generals, and he undertook to give each man five silver minae as soon as Babylon was reached, and their pay in full, until he had safely conveyed them back to Ionia again. In this manner the Hellenic force were persuaded—that is to say, the majority of them.

Menon, indeed, before it was clear what the rest of the soldiers would do—whether, in fact they would follow Cyrus or not—collected his own troops apart and made them the following speech:

«Men,” he said, «if you will listen to me, there is a method by which, without risk or toil, you may win the special favour of Cyrus beyond the rest of the soldiers. You ask what it is I would have you to do? I will tell you. Cyrus at this instant is begging the Hellenes to follow him to attack the king. I say then: Cross the Euphrates at once, before it is clear what answer the rest will make; if they vote in favour of following, you will get the credit of having set the example, and Cyrus will be grateful to you. He will look upon you as being the heartiest in his cause; he will repay, as of all others he best knows how; while, if the rest vote against crossing, we shall go back again; but as the sole adherents, whose fidelity he can altogether trust, it is you whom Cyrus will turn to account, as commandants of

*vocabulary*

ἄνω (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
upwards, out to sea  
βρέχω soak; it rains  
διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis  
διαβατός crossable, fordable  
ἐμπαλιν backwards, on the contrary  
ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise  
εὐτυχέω be lucky, prosper, succeed  
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
κατακαίω burn down ~caustic  
κῦρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
λοχαγία (ᾱα) rank of major, captain  
μάστιξ -εως (f) whip  
μαστός nipple, breast

μεγαλοπρεπής befitting greatness  
μέλω concern, interest, be one's  
responsibility  
μηκέτι no more  
πιστός faithful; trustworthy  
πρόεμι to have been before, earlier  
~ion  
σαφής clear, understandable  
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy  
συνέπομαι go along with ~sequel  
ὑποχωρέω recoil ~heir  
φρούριον fort

τοῦμπαλιν, ὑμῖν δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις πιστοτάτοις  
 χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ εἰς λοχαγίας, καὶ ἄλλου  
 οὔτινος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι τεύξεσθε Κύρου.»

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπείθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν  
 τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο  
 διαβεβηκότας, ἦσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι πέμψας  
 Γλοῦν εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ·  
 ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει, ἢ μηκέτι  
 με Κῦρον νομίζετε.» οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι  
 μεγάλας ὄντες ἠὔχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχήσαι, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ  
 δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας  
 διέβαινε· συνείπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτῷ  
 ἅπαν. καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη  
 ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Θαψακηνοὶ  
 ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπόποθ' οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατὸς γένοιτο  
 πέζῃ εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις, ἃ τότε Ἀβροκόμας προΐων  
 κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος διαβῇ. ἐδόκει δὲ θεῖον εἶναι  
 καὶ σαφῶς ὑποχωρήσαι τὸν ποταμὸν

|backwards, on |μῖν δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθόμενοις |faithful; trust-  
|the contrary |worthy

χρήσεται καὶ εἰς |fort καὶ εἰς |rank of ma- καὶ ἄλλου  
|jor, captain

οὕτινος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι τεύξεσθε Κύρου.»

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπείθοντο καὶ |pass over, cross, -|ν

τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. |authority; ὅ ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο  
|validity

|pass over, cross , |be pleased, enjoy ᾧ |army πέμψας

Γλοῦν εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς |concur

ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ |concur ἐμοὶ |be in/on, the|no more  
|mind

με Κύρον νομίζετε.» οἱ μὲν δὲ |soldier, ἐν ἐλπίσι  
|mercenary

μεγάλαις ὄντες ἡῦχοντο αὐτὸν |be lucky, pros- ἔνωνι δὲ καὶ  
|per, succeed

δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι |befitting greatness ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας

|pass over, go along with - καὶ τὸ ἄλλο |army αὐτῷ  
|cross

ἅπαν. καὶ τῶν |pass over, cross τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς |soak; it rains

|accomplish, pass, waste; ὡς ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Θαιψακηνοὶ  
|upwards, out to sea

ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπώποθ' οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς |crossable, γένοιτο  
|fordable

πέζη εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις, ἃ τότε Ἀβροκόμας |to have been before,  
|earlier

|burn down , ἵνα μὴ Κύρος |pass over, cross δὲ θεῖον εἶναι

καὶ |clear, |recoil τὸν ποταμὸν  
|under-  
|stand-  
|able

garrisons or captains of companies. You need only ask him for whatever you want, and you will get it from him, as being the friends of Cyrus.”

The men heard and obeyed, and before the rest had given their answer, they were already across. But when Cyrus perceived that Menon’s troops had crossed, he was well pleased, and he sent Glus to the division in question, with this message: «Soldiers, accept my thanks at present; eventually you shall thank me. I will see to that, or my name is not Cyrus.” The soldiers therefore could not but pray heartily for his success; so high their hopes ran. But to Menon, it was said, he sent gifts with lordly liberality. This done, Cyrus proceeded to cross; and in his wake followed the rest of the armament to a man. As they forded, never a man was wetted above the chest: nor ever until this moment, said the men of Thapascus, had the river been so crossed on foot, boats had always been required; but these, at the present time, Abrocomas, in his desire to hinder Cyrus from crossing, had been at pains to burn. Thus the passage was looked upon as a thing miraculous; the river had manifestly retired before the

*vocabulary***ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture**ἄρωμα** -τος (n, 3) land ~arable**ἀψίνθιον** type of sagebrush plant**βασιλεύω** be king**δένδρον** tree**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion**ἐνίστε** sometimes**ἐννέα** nine**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἐπισιτίζομαι** (ἴλ) take supplies**ἐρῆμος** empty**εὐώδης** fragrant**κάλαμος** reed**μεστός** full**ὀμαλῆς** level, even**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager**παντοῖος** all kinds of**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of ~plethora**πλησιάζω** bring/be near; have sex**προτρέχω** run forth, outrun**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**σταθμός** cottage; post**στρουθός** (f) sparrow ~struthiomimus**τρέχω** run, spin**ὕλη** (ῑ) forest, firewood**ὠτίς** bustard, Old World roadrunner

Κύρω ὡς βασιλεύσονται. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας σταθμοὺς ἑννέα παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς τὸν Ἀράξην ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι πολλαὶ μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

## 1.5

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίον ἅπαν ὁμαλὲς ὥσπερ θάλαττα, ἀψινθίου δὲ πλήρες· εἰ δέ τι καὶ ἄλλο ἐνῆν ὕλης ἢ καλάμου, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη ὥσπερ ἀρώματα· δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν ἐνῆν, θηρία δὲ παντοῖα, πλείστοι ὄνοι ἄγριοι, πολλαὶ δὲ στρουθοὶ αἱ μεγάλαι· ἐνῆσαν δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες καὶ δορκάδες· ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἱππεῖς ἐνίοτε ἐδίωκον. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄνοι, ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες ἔστασαν· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἔτρεχον θάττον· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν οἱ ἵπποι, ταὐτὸν ἐποιοῦν, καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ



Κύρω ὥς |be king |thence |drive out διὰ τῆς  
 Συρίας |cottage; post Ἰννέα |ca. 5 km πεντήκοντα· καὶ  
 ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς τὸν Ἀράξην ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν  
 κῶμαι πολλαὶ |full σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν  
 ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

### 1.5

|thence |drive out διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν Εὐφράτην  
 ποταμόν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων |cottage; post ἐρήμους πέντε  
 |ca. 5 km τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ  
 ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίων ἅπαν |level, even ὑπερ θάλαττα, |sage  
 δὲ |full, complete; (+gen) full of τι καὶ ἄλλο ἐνῆν ὕλης ἢ |reed , ἅπαντα  
 ἦσαν |fragrant ὕσπερ |land |tree δ' οὐδὲν ἐνῆν, θηρία  
 δὲ |all kinds of λείστοι |don- |wild, |key |savage , πολλαὶ δὲ |sparrow αἰ  
 μεγάλαι· |be in δὲ καὶ |roadrunner `δορκάδες· ταῦτα δὲ  
 τὰ θηρία οἱ ἵππεῖς |sometimes ὥκον. καὶ οἱ μὲν |donkey·τεῖ  
 τις διώκοι, |run forth, outrun ὥστασαν· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων  
 |run, spin θᾶπτον· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ |bring/be near; οἱ ἵπποι,  
 |have sex ταυτόν ἐποίουν, καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ

face of Cyrus, like a courtier bowing to his future king. From this place he continued his march through Syria nine stages—fifty parasangs—and they reached the river Araxes. Here were several villages full of corn and wine; in which they halted three days, and provisioned the army.

#### 1.5

Thence he marched on through Arabia, keeping the Euphrates on the right, five desert stages—thirty-five parasangs. In this region the ground was one long level plain, stretching far and wide like the sea, full of absinth; whilst all the other vegetation, whether wood or reed, was sweet scented like spice or sweet herb; there were no trees; but there was wild game of all kinds—wild asses in greatest abundance, with plenty of ostriches; besides these, there were bustards and antelopes. These creatures were occasionally chased by the cavalry. The asses, when pursued, would run forward a space, and then stand still—their pace being much swifter than that of horses; and as soon as the horses came close, they went through the same performance. The only way to catch them was for the riders to

*vocabulary*

ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix  
 ἀπαγορεύω forbid; fail, be worn out  
 ἀποσπάω tear/drag away  
 βραχύς low, short  
 δένδρον tree  
 διαδέχομαι be next, succeed ~doctrine  
 δίστημι stand apart ~stand  
 δρόμος running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
 ἐλάφειος deerlike, of deer  
 ἐνενήκοντα ninety  
 ἐνοικέω dwell in  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἐντεῦθεν thence  
 ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic  
 ἐπισιτίζομαι (ιῦ) take supplies  
 ἐρημος empty  
 εὐρος -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
 wind  
 ἡδέως pleasantly ~hedonism  
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

θηράω hunt, chase  
 ἱστίον sail ~stand  
 κορσωτός tasseled, fringed  
 κρέας -ως (n) meat ~creatine  
 κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle  
 λιμός (ι, f) famine  
 παραπλήσιος similar to  
 παρασάγγης -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
 ca. 5 km  
 πέρδιξ partridge ~fart  
 περιρρέω flow around ~rheostat  
 πετάννυμι (ῥ) spread, spread out  
 πέτομαι to fly ~petal  
 πλεθριαῖος 30 m in size ~plethora  
 πτέρυξ -γος (f) wing ~archeopteryx  
 σταθμός cottage; post  
 στρουθός (f) sparrow ~struthiomimus  
 τρεισκαίδεκα thirteen ~three  
 ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote  
 χόρτος barn, corral; fodder  
 ψιλός (ι) naked, bare ~epsilon  
 ὠτίς bustard, Old World roadrunner

διασπάντες οἱ ἱππεῖς θηρῶεν διαδεχόμενοι. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀλισκομένων ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, ἀπαλώτερα δέ. στρουθὸν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν ἱππέων ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπέσπα φεύγουσα, τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ δρόμῳ, ταῖς δὲ πτέρυξιν αἴρουσα, ὥσπερ ἰστίῳ χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας ἂν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ ἔστι λαμβάνειν· πέτονται γὰρ βραχὺ ὥσπερ πέρδικες καὶ ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι. τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν ἥδιστα ἦν.

Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνούνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. ἐνταῦθα ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ Κορσωτή· περιερρέιτο δ' αὕτη ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα κύκλῳ. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρισκαίδεκα παρασάγγας ἐνενήκοντα τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπασα ἡ χώρα· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικούντες

|stand apart οἱ ἱππεῖς |hunt, chase |be next, succeed ἀ δὲ κρέα τῶν  
 ἀλίσκομένων ἦν |similar to τοῖς |deerlike, of deer...λώτερα  
 δέ. |sparrow δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν  
 ἱππέων ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ |tear/drag away', οὔσα,  
 τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ |running ταῖς δὲ |wing αἶρουσα, ὥσπερ  
 |sail χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ |roadrunner τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ ἔστι  
 λαμβάνειν· πέτονται γὰρ βραχὺ ὥσπερ |partridge καὶ ταχὺ  
 |forbid; fail, be τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν ἥδιστα ἦν.  
 |worn out

Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ  
 τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμόν, τὸ |width; |30 m in size ἐνταῦθα  
 ἦν πόλις |empty, μεγάλη, |the east wind ὁ ἀνὰ δ' αὐτῇ |tasseled,  
 |περιρρέω?: flow' around; or ὁ τοῦ Μάσκα |circle, |ἐνταῦθ'  
 |περιρρέω?: flow around |wheel  
 ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. |thence |drive out

|cottage; post |ρήμους τρισκαίδεκα |ca. 5 km |ninety  
 τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ  
 Πύλας. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν |beast of burden  
 ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν |barn, οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν  
 |corral;  
 δένδρον, ἀλλὰ |naked, |bare...ασα ἢ |fodder  
 |χώρα· οἱ δὲ |dwell in

post themselves at intervals, and to hunt them in relays, as it were. The flesh of those they captured was not unlike venison, only more tender. No one was lucky enough to capture an ostrich. Some of the troopers did give chase, but it had soon to be abandoned; for the bird, in its effort to escape, speedily put a long interval between itself and its pursuers; plying its legs at full speed, and using its wings the while like a sail. The bustards were not so hard to catch when started suddenly; for they only take short flights, like partridges, and are soon tired. Their flesh is delicious.

As the army wended its way through this region, they reached the river Mascas, which is one hundred feet in breadth. Here stood a big deserted city called Corsote, almost literally environed by the stream, which flows round it in a circle. Here they halted three days and provisioned themselves. Thence they continued their march thirteen desert stages—ninety parasangs—with the Euphrates still on their right, until they reached the Gates. On these marches several of the baggage animals perished of hunger, for there was neither grass nor green herb, or tree of any sort; but the country throughout was barren. The inhabitants make their living by quarrying

*vocabulary*

ἀλέτης -ου (m, 1) miller, grinding stone  
 ἄλευρον flour  
 ἄλφιτον barley meal  
 ἄμαξα wagon  
 ἀνταγοράζω buy with money received  
 for  
 βαρβαρικός non-Greek  
 διαγίγνομαι go through; subsist  
 ~genus  
 διατελέω accomplish; keep doing  
 ~apostle  
 δυσπρόρευτος impassable ~pierce  
 ἐπιλείπω fail, not work ~eclipse  
 εὐδαίμων blessed with a good genius  
 εὐταξία good order ~syntax  
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
 ἡμιωβέλιον small coin  
 καπίθη Persian unit, ca. 1 liter?  
 κράτιστος best  
 κρέας -ως (n) meat ~creatine  
 ὀβολός type of small coin, weight  
 ὄνος (f) donkey ~onager  
 ὀργή urge, impulse; anger  
 ὀρύσσω dig  
 Πέρσης Persian  
 πηλός clay, mud

πότε when?  
 πρίσμαι buy  
 πωλέω sell  
 σίγλος shekel  
 σῖτος grain, bread, food ~parasite  
 σταθμάομαι judge, conclude  
 στάθμη carpenter's line ~station  
 σταθμός cottage; post  
 στενοχωρία a narrows, strait  
 ~stentorian  
 στρατεύμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 στρατός common people/soldiers  
 ~strategy  
 στρατώ be on a campaign ~strategy  
 συνεχιβιάζω help in bringing out  
 ~basis  
 συνεπισπεύδω join in forcing onward  
 ~repudiate  
 σχολή rest, leisure  
 τέσσαρες four ~trapezoid  
 χιλός (i) fodder  
 χοῖνιξ -κος (f) liter; shackle  
 χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
 ὠνόμαι buy

ὄνους ἀλέτας παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ὀρύττοντες καὶ ποιοῦντες εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦγον καὶ ἐπώλουν καὶ ἀνταγοράζοντες σῖτον ἕζων.

Τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σῖτος ἐπέλιπε, καὶ πρίασθαι οὐκ ἦν εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου βαρβαρικῷ, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. ὁ δὲ σίγλος δύναται ἑπτὰ ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιωβέλιον Ἀττικούς· ἡ δὲ καπίθη δύο χοίνικας Ἀττικὰς ἐχώρει. κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο. ἦν δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὗς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὅποτε ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. καὶ δὴ ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος ταῖς ἀμάξαις δυσπορεύτου ἐπέστη ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς ἀμάξας. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ σχολαίως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς κρατίστους συνεπισπεῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας. ἔνθα δὴ μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας



|don- |miller, grind- ἵ τὸν ποταμὸν |dig καὶ ποιοῦντες  
 |key |ing stone  
 εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦγον καὶ |sell καὶ |buy with money re-  
 |ceived for  
 σῖτον ἔζων.

Τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σῖτος |fail, not work ἵ πρίασθαι οὐκ ἦν  
 εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου |non-Greek , τὴν

|Persian |flour ἦ |barley meal ἐτάρων |shekel ὁ δὲ  
 unit, ca. 1  
 liter?  
 shekel δύναται ἐπτὰ |type of small|small coin Ἀττικούς·  
 |coin, weight

ἡ δὲ |Persian unit, ca. |liter; Ἀττικὰς ἐχώρει. κρέα οὖν  
 1 liter? |shackle

ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται |go through; subsist, δὲ τούτων  
 τῶν σταθμῶν οὓς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλανυν, ὅποτε ἦ  
 πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο |accomplish; ἦ πρὸς |fodder καὶ δὴ  
 |keep doing  
 ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ |clay, mud| ἀνέντος ταῖς |wagon

|impassable ἐπέστη ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις  
 καὶ |blessed with a good καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα  
 |genius  
 λαβόντας τοῦ |non-Greek στρατοῦ |help in bringing out

|wagon ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ |rest, leisure ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ  
 ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς κρατίστους

|join in forcing τὰς |wagon ἐνθα δὲ μέρος τι τῆς |good order  
 |onward

millstones on the river banks, which they work up and take to Babylon and sell, purchasing corn in exchange for their goods.

Corn failed the army, and was not to be got for money, except in the Lydian market open in Cyrus's Asiatic army; where a kapithe of wheat or barley cost four shekels; the shekel being equal to seven and a half Attic obols, whilst the kapithe is the equivalent of two Attic choeneces, dry measure, so that the soldiers subsisted on meat alone for the whole period. Some of the stages were very long, whenever they had to push on to find water or fodder; and once they found themselves involved in a narrow way, where the deep clay presented an obstacle to the progress of the wagons. Cyrus, with the nobles about him, halted to superintend the operation, and ordered Glus and Pigres to take a body of barbarians and to help in extricating the wagons. As they seemed to be slow about the business, he turned round angrily to the Persian nobles and bade them lend a hand to force the wagons out. Then, if ever, what goes to constitute one branch of good discipline, was to be witnessed. Each of those addressed, just

*vocabulary*

**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery  
**ἀναξυρίδες** Persian pants  
**ἀπαρασκεύαστος** unprepared  
**ἀσθενής** weak  
**γῆλοφος** hill, mound  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διασπάω** tear apart ~spatula  
**διατρίβω** (ι) wear down, delay  
 ~tribology  
**εἰσπηδάω** burst in, rush in ~pedal  
**ἐκκομίζω** remove; bury a corpse  
**ἐνιοι** some  
**ἐπισιτισμός** (ιι) resupply, forage  
 ~parasite  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater  
**ἰσχυρός** (υ) strong, forceful, violent  
**καθέζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit  
 down, sit up  
**κάνδυσ** sleeved jacket  
**μετέωρος** up in the air ~meteor  
**μῆκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature  
**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike

**ὅπου** where  
**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas  
**πέραν** (ᾱ) on the other side, across  
**πηλός** clay, mud  
**ποικίλλω** make elaborately  
**ποικίλος** ornamented; various  
**πολυτελής** very expensive; (person)  
 extravagant  
**πορφύρεος** purple  
**πρανής** (ᾱ) prone; precipitous  
**προσέχω** direct to; think about  
**ρίπτω** hurl  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρεπτός** pliant; type of necklace  
 ~strep throat  
**σύμπας** (ᾱ) all together  
**συναγείρω** gather together ~agora  
**συνεῖδον** be able to see  
**σχολαῖος** slow, leisurely  
**τράχηλος** neck ~trachea  
**τρέχω** run, spin  
**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor  
**φέλιον** armlet, anklet

ἦν θεάσασθαι. ῥύψαντες γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροῦς κἀνδύς ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος ἐστηκώς, ἴεντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις ἐπὶ νίκη καὶ μάλα κατὰ πρανοῦς γηλόφου, ἔχοντες τούτους τε τοὺς πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις καὶ ψέλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ σὺν τούτοις εἰσπηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν πηλὸν θᾶπτον ἢ ὥς τις ἂν ᾤετο μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν τὰς ἀμάξας.

Τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος ὡς σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διατρίβων ὅπου μὴ ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἔνεκα ἢ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου ἐκαθέζετο, νομίζων, ὅσω θᾶπτον ἔλθοι, τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι, ὅσω δὲ σχολαίτερον, τοσούτῳ πλέον συναγείρεσθαι βασιλεῖ στράτευμα. καὶ συνιδεῖν δ' ἦν τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν τῇ βασιλέως ἀρχῇ πλήθει μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ οὖσα, τοῖς δὲ μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενής, εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων τὸν πόλεμον ποιοῖτο.

Πέραν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους

ἦν θεάσασθαι. |hurl γὰρ τοὺς |purple |sleeved ὅπου  
 |jacket  
 ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος ἐστηκώς, ἔεντο ὥσπερ ἂν |run, spin. ις ἐπὶ  
 |victory. καὶ μάλα κατὰ |prone; |hill, , ἔχοντες τούτους  
 |precipitous|mound  
 τε τοὺς |expensive; |extravagant χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλας |Persian pants,  
 |some δὲ καὶ |pliant; type περὶ τοῖς |neck καὶ |armlet, τερὶ  
 |of necklace |anklet  
 ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ σὺν τούτοις |burst in, rush in εἰς τὸν  
 πηλὸν θάπτον ἢ ὥς τις ἂν ὤετο |up in the air |remove;  
 |inter τὰς  
 |wagon

Τὸ δὲ |all together ἵλος ἦν Κῦρος ὥς |‘push on,’ get ταν τὴν  
 |going, hurry  
 ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ |wear down, delay. μὴ |resupply, ἔνεκα ἢ τινος  
 |forage  
 ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου ἐκαθέζετο, νομίζων, ὅσῳ θάπτον ἔλθοι,  
 τοσούτῳ |unprepared βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι, ὅσῳ  
 δὲ |slow, leisurely , τοσούτῳ πλέον |gather together βασιλεῖ  
 |army . καὶ συνιδεῖν δ’ ἦν τῷ |direct to; τὸν νοῦν τῇ  
 |think about  
 βασιλέως ἀρχῇ πλήθει μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ  
 οὖσα, τοῖς δὲ |length, τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ |tear apart τὰς  
 |stature  
 δυνάμεις |weak , εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων τὸν πόλεμον ποιοῖτο.  
 |across δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους

where he chanced to be standing, threw off his purple cloak, and flung himself into the work with as much eagerness as if it had been a charge for victory. Down a steep hill side they flew, with their costly tunics and embroidered trousers—some with the circlets round their necks, and bracelets on their arms—in an instant, they had sprung into the miry clay, and in less time than one could have conceived, they had landed the wagons safe on terra firma.

Altogether it was plain that Cyrus was bent on pressing on the march, and averse to stoppages, except where he halted for the sake of provisioning or some other necessary object; being convinced that the more rapidly he advanced, the less prepared for battle would he find the king; while the slower his own progress, the larger would be the hostile army which he would find collected. Indeed, the attentive observer could see, at a glance, that if the king's empire was strong in its extent of territory and the number of inhabitants, that strength is compensated by an inherent weakness, dependent upon the length of roads and the inevitable dispersion of defensive forces, where an invader insists upon pressing home the war by forced marches.

On the opposite side of the Euphrates to the point reached on one of these desert

*vocabulary*

**ἀγοράζω** do commerce ~agora  
**ἀμφιλέγω** argue about  
**ἄπτω** set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic  
**ἀφιππεύω** ride away ~hippo  
**βάλανος** (f) nut; pin, bolt  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**διάβασις** -εως (f) crossing, passage ~basis  
**διφθέρα** leather  
**εἴτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**ἰσχυρός** (ū) strong, forceful, violent  
**κάρφη** hay  
**κατασκέπτομαι** inspect, explore ~skeptc  
**κοῦφος** light, nimble

**μελίνη** millet  
**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy  
**οὐπω** no longer  
**πῖμπλημι** fill (+gen.) ~plenum  
**πληγή** a hit ~plectrum  
**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στέγασμα** a covering ~stegosaurus  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle ~demagogue  
**συσπάω** pull together  
**σχεδία** raft  
**φοῖνιξ** -χος (m) red or purple dye or color; bay (horse); palm tree  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage  
**χόρτος** barn, corral; fodder

σταθμούς ἦν πόλις εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δὲ  
 Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἡγόραζον τὰ  
 ἐπιτήδεια, σχεδίαῖς διαβαίνοντες ὧδε. διφθέρας ἅς εἶχον  
 στεγάσματα ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου κούφου, εἶτα συνήγον  
 καὶ συνέσπων, ὥς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ  
 τούτων διέβαινον καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, οἶνόν τε ἐκ  
 τῆς βαλάνου πεποιημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος καὶ σίτον  
 μελίνης· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ πλείστον.

Ἀμφιλεξάντων δέ τι ἐνταῦθα τῶν τε τοῦ Μένωνος  
 στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας  
 ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν· ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν  
 πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ  
 στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ  
 Κλεάρχῳ. τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν  
 διάβασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν  
 ἀγορὰν ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος  
 στρατεύματος σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· Κῦρος δὲ οὔπω  
 ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι προσήλανε· τῶν δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν



|cottage; post ἦν πόλις |blessed with a ἡ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δὲ  
|good genius

Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται |do commerce· ἃ

ἐπιτήδεια, |raft |pass over, cross ὕδρ· |leather ἅς εἶχον

|a covering |fill (+gen.) |barn, |light, |then, there, ὄν  
|corral; |nimble |fore, next

καὶ |pull together ὥς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς |hay τὸ ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ

τούτων |pass over, cross ἁλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, οἶνόν τε ἐκ

τῆς |nut; pin, bolt |τοιημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ |red, red dye; ἡ σίτον  
|palm tree

|millet τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ πλείστον.

|argue about δέ τι |there, here γῶν τε τοῦ Μένωνος

στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας

ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν· ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν

πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ |army ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ

στρατιῶται |be violent, rage καὶ |anger, pro- ἰσχυρῶς τῷ  
|voke, annoy

Κλεάρχῳ. τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν

διάβασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐκεῖ |inspect, explore τὴν

ἀγορὰν |ride away ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ |tent; |stage  
|stage

|army σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· Κῦρος δὲ |no longer

ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι |go to, approach ὧν δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν

stages, was a large and flourishing city named Charmande. From this town the soldiers made purchases of provisions, crossing the river on rafts, in the following fashion: They took the skins which they used as tent coverings, and filled them with light grass; they then compressed and stitched them tightly together by the ends, so that the water might not touch the hay. On these they crossed and got provisions: wine made from the date-nut, and millet or panic-corn, the common staple of the country.

Some dispute or other here occurred between the soldiers of Menon and Clearchus, in which Clearchus sentenced one of Menon's men, as the delinquent, and had him flogged. The man went back to his own division and told them. Hearing what had been done to their comrade, his fellows fretted and fumed, and were highly incensed against Clearchus. The same day Clearchus visited the passage of the river, and after inspecting the market there, was returning with a few followers, on horseback, to his tent, and had to pass through Menon's quarters. Cyrus had not yet come up, but was riding up in the same direction. One of Menon's men, who was splitting wood,

*vocabulary*

**ἄξινη** (ī) war-axe  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**γόνυ** γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon  
**διελαύνω** drive through, over ~elastic  
**εἴτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out  
 ~plectrum  
**ἐξίστημι** displace, transform; (+gen)  
 give up ~station  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**καταλεύω** stone to death  
**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to  
 ~fugitive  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith  
**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman ~hoplite  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**πάθος** -ους (n, 3) an experience,  
 passion, condition  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πραῶς** soft, gentle  
**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**σχίζω** split ~schism  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**τεσσαράκοντα** forty ~trapezoid  
**τετταράκοντα** forty  
**τρέχω** run, spin  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage

ξύλα σχίζων τις ὡς εἶδε Κλέαρχον διελαύνοντα, ἵησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ οὗτος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἤμαρτεν· ἄλλος δὲ λίθῳ καὶ ἄλλος, εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης. ὁ δὲ καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα, καὶ εὐθὺς παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὄπλα· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε μῆναι τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα θέντας, αὐτὸς δὲ λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾶκας καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλείστοι Θρᾶκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλήχθαι καὶ αὐτὸν Μένωνα, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι.

Ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσιῶν καὶ τάξις αὐτῷ ἐπομένη τῶν ὀπλιτῶν εὐθὺς οὖν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρων ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλεάρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαινε ὅτι αὐτοῦ ὀλίγου δεήσαντος καταλευσθῆναι πρᾶως λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος, ἐκέλευσέ τε αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ μέσου ἐξίστασθαι.

Ἐν τούτῳ δ' ἐπήει καὶ Κῦρος καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα·

piece of wood axe |split | τις ὥς εἶδε Κλέαρχον |drive through, over ἥσι τῇ  
 καὶ οὗτος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἥμαρτεν· ἄλλος δὲ |stone καὶ  
 ἄλλος, |then, therefore, next |screaming, shouting, ἐνομένης. ὁ δὲ |resort to, flee to, appeal to  
 εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ |army , καὶ εὐθὺς |transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
 |tool καὶ τοὺς μὲν |hoplite, heavy infantryman οὗ ἐκέλευσε μῆναι τὰς  
 |shield πρὸς τὰ |knee θέντας, αὐτὸς δὲ λαβὼν τοὺς  
 Θρᾶκας καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ |army  
 πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλείστοι Θρᾶκες,  
 ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους |panic, be καὶ  
 |knocked out  
 αὐτὸν Μένωνα, καὶ |run, spin ἐπὶ τὰ |tool οἱ δὲ καὶ ἕστασαν  
 |be confused, distressed, τῷ πράγματι.  
 Ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος |approach καὶ τάξις αὐτῷ  
 ἐπομένη τῶν |hoplite, heavy infantryman οὖν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρων  
 ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ |tool καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλεάρχου μὴ ποιεῖν  
 ταῦτα. ὁ δ' |be violent, rage ὥτι αὐτοῦ ὀλίγου δεήσαντος  
 |stone to death |soft, gentle λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ |an experience, passion, condition  
 αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ μέσου |displace, transform; (+gen) give up  
 Ἐν τούτῳ δ' |lie upon; approach καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα·

caught sight of Clearchus as he rode past, and aimed a blow at him with his axe. The aim took no effect; when another hurled a stone at him, and a third, and then several, with shouts and hisses. Clearchus made a rapid retreat to his own troops, and at once ordered them to get under arms. He bade his hoplites remain in position with their shields resting against their knees, while he, at the head of his Thracians and horsemen, of which he had more than forty in his army—Thracians for the most part—advanced against Menon's soldiers, so that the latter, with Menon himself, were panic-stricken, and ran to seize their arms; some even stood riveted to the spot, in perplexity at the occurrence.

Just then Proxenus came up from behind, as chance would have it, with his division of hoplites, and without a moment's hesitation marched into the open space between the rival parties, and grounded arms; then he fell to begging Clearchus to desist. The latter was not too well pleased to hear his trouble mildly spoken of, when he had barely escaped being stoned to death; and he bade Proxenus retire and leave the intervening space open. At this juncture Cyrus arrived and inquired what was happening. There was no time for

*vocabulary*

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**δισχίλιοι** 2000 ~kilo-

**εικάζω** liken; conjecture

**Ἕλληγ** Greek

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm

~volunteer

**ἵχνιον** footprint ~ichneumon

**καίω** burn ~caustic

**κατακόπτω** cut down, shatter

**καταλλάσσω** exchange; make up with

**κόπρος** (f) dung, a farm yard

~coprolite

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**παλτός** brandished, hurled

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier

~ion

**προσέχω** belong to, it beseems

**προσίημι** be allowed near

**στίβος** trail

**συνάπτω** join, partake; adjoin; consult;

fight ~haptic

**χιλός** (ι) fodder

**χρήσιμος** useful

εὐθύς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. «Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. εἰ γάρ τινα ἀλλήλοις μάχην συνάψετε, νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον· κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων πάντες οὔτοι οὖς ὁρᾶτε βάρβαροι πολεμώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων.» ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο· καὶ παυσάμενοι ἀμφοτέρωτεροι κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα.

## 1.6

Ἐντεῦθεν προϊόντων ἐφαίνετο ἵχνια ἵππων καὶ κόπρος· εἰκάζετο δ' εἶναι ὁ στίβος ὡς δισχιλίων ἵππων. οὔτοι προϊόντες ἔκαιον καὶ χιλὸν καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. Ὅρόντας δέ, Πέρσης ἀνὴρ, γένει τε προσήκων βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας, καταλλαγείς



εὐθὺς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ <sup>|brandished,</sup><sub>|hurled</sub> τὰς χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς  
 παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ  
 λέγει τάδε. «Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ  
 παρόντες <sup>|Greek</sup> , οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. εἰ γάρ τινα  
 ἀλλήλοις μάχην <sup>|join, partake; ad-</sup><sub>|join; consult; fight</sub> ἔξετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ  
 ἐμέ τε <sup>|cut down, shatter</sup> καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον·  
 κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων πάντες οὗτοι οὓς  
 ὁράτε <sup>|non-Greek</sup> πολεμώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ  
 βασιλεῖ ὄντων.» ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ  
 ἐγένετο· καὶ παυσάμενοι ἀμφότεροι κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο  
 τὰ <sup>|tool</sup> .

## 1.6

<sup>|thence</sup> <sup>|to have been</sup> φαίνεται <sup>|footprint</sup> πων καὶ <sup>|dung, a farm yard</sup>  
<sup>|before, earlier</sup>  
<sup>|liken;</sup> δ' εἶναι ὁ <sup>|trail</sup> ὥς <sup>|2000</sup> ἵππων. οὗτοι  
<sup>|conjecture</sup>  
<sup>|to have been</sup> <sup>|burn</sup> καὶ <sup>|fodder</sup> καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο <sup>|useful</sup> ἦν.  
<sup>|before, ear-</sup>  
<sup>|lier</sup> Ὀρόντας δέ, Πέρσης ἀνὴρ, γένει τε προσήκων βασιλεῖ  
 καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν  
<sup>|plot, plan, harm</sup> ῥῳ καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας, <sup>|exchange;</sup>  
<sup>|make up with</sup>

hesitation. With his javelins firmly grasped in his hands he galloped up—escorted by some of his faithful bodyguard, who were present—and was soon in the midst, exclaiming: «Clearchus, Proxenus, and you other Hellenes yonder, you know not what you do. As surely as you come to blows with one another, our fate is sealed—this very day I shall be cut to pieces, and so will you: your turn will follow close on mine. Let our fortunes once take an evil turn, and these barbarians whom you see around will be worse foes to us than those who are at present serving the king.” At these words Clearchus came to his senses. Both parties paused from battle, and retired to their quarters: order reigned.

### 1.6

As they advanced from this point (opposite Charmande), they came upon the hoof-prints and dung of horses at frequent intervals. It looked like the trail of some two thousand horses. Keeping ahead of the army, these fellows burnt up the grass and everything else that was good for use. Now there was a Persian, named Orontas; he was closely related to the king by birth: and in matters pertaining to war reckoned among the best of Persian warriors. Having formerly been at war with Cyrus, and afterwards

*vocabulary*

**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize, read,  
understand, persuade  
**διαγγέλλω** send news, proclaim  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἐνεδρεύω** ambush, trap  
**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion  
**ἐπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐπιστολή** message, letter  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
chief ~hegemony  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**κωλύω** (ō) hinder, prevent  
**μήποτε** absolutely never  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman ~hoplite  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy  
**πιστώ** reassure; also (pass) promise  
**προκατακαίω** burn before  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
understand ~epilepsy  
**ὑποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer  
~doctrine  
**ὑπόμνημα** -τος (n, 3) memo, memorial  
**φίλιος** friendly  
**χίλιοι** (ī) thousand ~kilo-  
**ὠφέλιμος** helping, useful

δέ. οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίῃ ἱππέας χιλίους, ὅτι τοὺς προκατακαίοντας ἱππέας ἢ κατακαίνοι ἂν ἐνεδρεύσας ἢ ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἂν ἔλοι καὶ κωλύσειε τοῦ καίειν ἐπιόντας, καὶ ποιήσειεν ὥστε μήποτε δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα βασιλεῖ διαγγεῖλαι. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι, καὶ ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων.

Ὁ δ' Ὀρόντας νομίσας ἐτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἱππέας γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέα ὅτι ἤξοι ἔχων ἱππέας ὥς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φράσαι τοῖς αὐτοῦ ἱππεῦσιν ἐκέλευεν ὥς φίλιον αὐτὸν ὑποδέχεσθαι. ἐνῆν δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλίας ὑπομνήματα καὶ πίστεως. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὥς ᾧετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδωσιν. ἀναγνοὺς δὲ αὐτὴν ὁ Κῦρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόνταν, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἐπτά, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσεν ὀπλίτας

δέ. οὗτος Κύρω εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίῃ ἱππέας χιλίους,  
 ὅτι τοὺς |burn before ἱππέας ἣ |kill ἂν  
 |ambush, trap, ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἂν ἔλοι καὶ |hinder,  
 |prevent  
 τοῦ |burn |lie upon; approach ἴσειεν ὥστε |absolutely ἵνασθαι  
 |never  
 αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου |army βασιλεῖ |send news, proclaim  
 τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα ἐδόκει |helping, εἶναι,  
 |useful  
 καὶ ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν  
 |leader

Ὁ δ' Ὀρόντας νομίσας ἐτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἱππέας  
 γράφει |message, παρὰ βασιλέα ὅτι ἦξοι ἔχων ἱππέας ὡς  
 |letter  
 ἂν δύνηται πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φράσαι τοῖς αὐτοῦ ἱππεῦσιν  
 ἐκέλευεν ὡς |friendly αὐτὸν |welcome, ac- ἐνῆν δὲ ἐν  
 |cept, suffer  
 τῇ |message, καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν |friendly |memo, καὶ  
 |letter |memorial  
 πίστεως. ταύτην τὴν |message, δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὡς  
 |letter  
 ᾗετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδωσιν. |read δὲ αὐτὴν ὁ  
 Κῦρος |seize, capture; Ὀρόνταν, καὶ |call together τὴν ἑαυτοῦ  
 |understand  
 |tent; Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἐπτά, καὶ  
 |stage  
 τοὺς τῶν |Greek στρατηγούς ἐκέλευσεν |hoplite, heavy  
 |infantryman

reconciled to him, he now made a conspiracy to destroy him. He made a proposal to Cyrus: if Cyrus would furnish him with a thousand horsemen, he would deal with these troopers, who were burning down everything in front of them; he would lay an ambush and cut them down, or he would capture a host of them alive; in any case, he would put a stop to their aggressiveness and burnings; he would see to it that they did not ever get a chance of setting eyes on Cyrus's army and reporting its advent to the king. The proposal seemed plausible to Cyrus, who accordingly authorised Orontas to take a detachment from each of the generals, and be gone.

He, thinking that he had got his horsemen ready to his hand, wrote a letter to the king, announcing that he would ere long join him with as many troopers as he could bring; he bade him, at the same time, instruct the royal cavalry to welcome him as a friend. The letter further contained certain reminders of his former friendship and fidelity. This despatch he delivered into the hands of one who was a trusty messenger, as he thought; but the bearer took and gave it to Cyrus. Cyrus read it. Orontas was arrested. Then Cyrus summoned to his tent seven of the noblest Persians among his personal attendants, and sent orders to the Hellenic generals to bring up a body

*vocabulary*

**ἀκρόπολις** -εως (f) citadel, high part of a city ~acute

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel

**ἀπόρρυνμι** (ὑ) set forth ~hormone

**ἀπόρρητος** forbidden, secret

**Ἕλλην** Greek

**ἔρωτάω** ask about something

**κρίσις** -εως (f) decision, issue

**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman ~hoplite

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite

**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so

**προσπολεμέω** make war on

**προτιμάω** (ī) prefer, pay attention to

**σκηνή** tent; stage

**σύμβουλος** adviser

**τρισχίλιοι** 3000 ~kilo-

**ὕπήκοον** -ῶ cumin

**ὕπήκοος** heeding, subject

ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνὴν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὀπλίτας. Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον, ὅς γε καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτιμηθῆναι μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλήνων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξῆλθεν, ἀπήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὡς ἐγένετο· οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν.

Ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου ὧδε. «Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος ὃ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντα τουτουί. τοῦτον γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθεῖς, ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν, καὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν προσπολεμῶν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ δεξιὰν ἔλαβον καὶ ἔδωκα.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, Ὀρόντα, ἔστιν ὃ τι σε ἡδίκησα; ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐ. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἡρώτα· Οὐκοῦν



ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέσθαι τὰ |tool περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ

|tent;  
stage . οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς |3000

|hoplite, heavy  
infantryman ἄρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε |adviser ,

ὅς γε καὶ αὐτῶ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει |prefer, pay at-  
tention to

μάλιστα τῶν |Greek ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξῆλθεν, |announce, or-  
der, promise

τοῖς φίλοις τὴν |decision, οὐ Ὅρόντα ὡς ἐγένετο· οὐ γὰρ  
issue

ἀπόρρητον ἦν.

Ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου ᾧδε. «Παρεκάλεσα  
ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος ὅ τι  
δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο  
πράξω περὶ Ὅρόντα τουτουί. τοῦτον γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ  
ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθεῖς,  
ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν  
ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν |citadel , καὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν  
προσπολεμῶν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ  
πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ δεξιὰν ἔλαβον καὶ ἔδωκα.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, Ὅρόντα, ἔστιν ὅ τι σε ἡδίκησα;

ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐ. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος |ask |not so?; and so

of hoplites. These troops were to take up a position round his tent. This the generals did; bringing up about three thousand hoplites. Clearchus was also invited inside, to assist at the court-martial; a compliment due to the position he held among the other generals, in the opinion not only of Cyrus, but also of the rest of the court. When he came out, he reported the circumstances of the trial (as to which, indeed, there was no mystery) to his friends.

He said that Cyrus opened the inquiry with these words: «I have invited you hither, my friends, that I may take advice with you, and carry out whatever, in the sight of God and man, it is right for me to do, as concerning the man before you, Orontas. The prisoner was, in the first instance, given to me by my father, to be my faithful subject. In the next place, acting, to use his own words, under the orders of my brother, and having hold of the acropolis of Sardis, he went to war with me. I met war with war, and forced him to think it more prudent to desist from war with me: whereupon we shook hands, exchanging solemn pledges.”

«After that,” and at this point Cyrus turned to Orontas, and addressed him personally — « after that, did I

*vocabulary***ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm

~volunteer

**ἑρωτάω** ask about something**μεταμέλομαι** (impers.+dat.) cause

regret to; (mp) regret

**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**πότε** when?**σαυτοῦ** yourself**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

ὕστερον, ὥς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμολογεῖς, οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ  
 ἀδικούμενος ἀποστὰς εἰς Μυσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν  
 χώραν ὃ τι ἐδύνω; ἔφη Ὁρόντας. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος,  
 ὁπότ' αὐτὸς ἔγνωσ τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς  
 Ἀρτέμιδος βωμὸν μεταμέλειν τέ σοι ἔφησθα καὶ πείσας  
 ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; καὶ  
 ταῦθ' ὁμολόγει Ὁρόντας. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς  
 ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας;  
 εἰπόντος δὲ τοῦ Ὁρόντα ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεὶς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ  
 Κῦρος αὐτόν· Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι;  
 Ἥ γὰρ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη Ὁρόντας.

Ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος· Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο  
 τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός; ὁ δὲ  
 ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ' ἂν ποτε  
 ἔτι δόξαιμι.

Πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν· Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ  
 τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ  
 πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι γνώμην ὃ τι σοι δοκεῖ.

ἕστερον, ὥς αὐτὸς σὺ |agree with/to οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ  
 ἀδικούμενος ἀποστὰς εἰς Μυσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν  
 χώραν ὅ τι ἐδύνω; ἔφη Ὁρόντας. |not so?; and' so Ἦ Κῦρος,  
 ὁπότ' αὐτὸς ἔγνωσ τὴν |yourself δύναμιν, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς  
 Ἀρτέμιδος |altar μεταμέλειν τέ σοι ἔφησθα καὶ πείσας  
 ἐμὲ |faithful; ... ἔδωκάς μοι καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; καὶ  
 |trustworthy ταῦθ' |agree with/to Ὁρόντας. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεῖς  
 ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον |plot, plan, harm ... |visible, ... /ονας;  
 |conspicuous εἰπόντος δὲ τοῦ Ὁρόντα ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεῖς, |ask ὁ  
 Κῦρος αὐτόν· Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ |unfair; ob-; ἐνήσθαι;  
 |stinate, bad Ἥ γὰρ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη Ὁρόντας.

Ἐκ τούτου πάλιν |ask ὁ Κῦρος· Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο  
 τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ |faithful; ... ἔ  
 |trustworthy ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ' ἂν ποτε  
 ἔτι δόξαιμι.

Πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν· Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ  
 τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ  
 πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, |display, γνώμην ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ.  
 |declare

do you any wrong?" Answer, «Never." Again another question: «Then later on, having received, as you admit, no injury from me, did you revolt to the Mysians and injure my territory, as far as in you lay?"—« I did," was the reply. «Then, once more having discovered the limits of your power, did you flee to the altar of Artemis, crying out that you repented? and did you thus work upon my feelings, that we a second time shook hands and made interchange of solemn pledges? Are these things so?" Orontas again assented. «Then what injury have you received from me," Cyrus asked, «that now for the third time, you have been detected in a treasonous plot against me?"—« I must needs do so," he answered.

Then Cyrus put one more question: «But the day may come, may it not, when you will once again be hostile to my brother, and a faithful friend to myself?" The other answered: «Even if I were, you could never be brought to believe it, Cyrus."

At this point Cyrus turned to those who were present and said: «Such has been the conduct of the prisoner in the past: such is his language now. I now call upon you, and you first, Clearchus, to declare your opinion—what think you?" And

*vocabulary*

ἐθελοντής -οῦ (m, 1) a volunteer  
 εἰκάζω liken; conjecture  
 εἰσάγω lead in ~demagogue  
 εἴτα then, therefore, next  
 ἐκποδών out of the way  
 ἐντεῦθεν thence  
 ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue  
 ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic  
 ζώνη girdle; waist, loins ~zone  
 καίπερ even if  
 μηκέτι no more  
 πιστός faithful; trustworthy  
 προσκυνέω kow tow to; kiss  
 προστάσσω post at, attach to,

command

προστίθμι add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
 πώποτε never  
 σκηνή tent; stage  
 σκηπτοῦχος scepter-bearer ~scepter  
 σταθμός cottage; post  
 συγγενεύς inborn, kin to  
 συγγενής inborn, kin to  
 συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult  
 ~volunteer  
 σχολή rest, leisure  
 τάφος (m) funeral, grave; (n)  
 astonishment

Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. Συμβουλευώ ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέη τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ σχολὴ ἢ ἡμῖν, τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι, τοὺς ἐβελοντὰς τούτους εὖ ποιεῖν. ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσθέσθαι.

Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, κελεύοντος Κύρου ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόνταν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς· εἶτα δ' ἐξήγον αὐτὸν οἷς προσετάχθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἷπερ πρόσθεν προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν, καίπερ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσήχθη, τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα οὔτε ζῶντα Ὀρόνταν οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε πώποτε, οὐδὲ ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς ἔλεγεν· εἵκαζον δὲ ἄλλοι ἄλλως· τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη.

## 1.7

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς



Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. |give advice; ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα  
 |out of the way. εἶσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς |no more δέη  
 τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ |rest, ἢ ἡμῶν, τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον  
 |leisure  
 εἶναι, τοὺς |a volunteer τούτους εὖ ποιεῖν. ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ  
 γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους |add; impose; (mp)  
 |agree; side with  
 Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, κελεύοντος Κύρου ἔλαβον τῆς |girdle;  
 |waist  
 τὸν Ὀρόνταν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες καὶ  
 οἱ συγγενεῖς· |then, ὥστε |lead out αὐτὸν οἷς |post at, attach.  
 |therefore, |to, command  
 |next  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἷπερ πρόσθεν |kow tow to; kiss καὶ  
 τότε |kow tow to; kiss . |even if εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον  
 ἄγοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου |tent; |lead in , τοῦ  
 |stage  
 |faithful; τῶν Κύρου |scepter-bearer , μετὰ ταῦτα οὔτε  
 |trustworthy  
 ζῶντα Ὀρόνταν οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε |never , οὐδὲ  
 ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς ἔλεγεν· |liken; ὥστε ἄλλοι  
 |conjecture  
 ἄλλως· |(m) funeral, ὁ ὅτι; never αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη.  
 |(n) astonishment

1.7

|thence |drive out διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας |cottage; post , αἶψα

Clearchus answered: «My advice to you is to put this man out of the way as soon as may be, so that we may be saved the necessity of watching him, and have more leisure, as far as he is concerned, to requite the services of those whose friendship is sincere.” — « To this opinion,” he told us, «the rest of the court adhered.” After that, at the bidding of Cyrus, each of those present, in turn, including the kinsmen of Orontas, took him by the girdle; which is as much as to say, «Let him die the death,” and then those appointed led him out; and they who in old days were wont to do obeisance to him, could not refrain, even at that moment, from bowing down before him, albeit they knew he was being led forth to death.

After they had conducted him to the tent of Artapates, the trustiest of Cyrus’s wand-bearers, none set eyes upon him ever again, alive or dead. No one, of his own knowledge, could declare the manner of his death; though some conjectured one thing and some another. No tomb to mark his resting-place, either then or since, was ever seen.

#### 1.7

From this place Cyrus marched through Babylonia three

*vocabulary*

**ἁμείνων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**αὐτόμολος** deserting, defecting  
**ἀφοράω** look away, at ~panorama  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**διατάσσω** arrange, array  
**ἐλευθερία** freedom  
**Ἕλληγν** Greek  
**ἐξέτασις** scrutiny  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**εὐδαιμονίζω** consider happy  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**θάρσυνος** having plucked up courage  
**θαρσύνω** (ῶ) encourage  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia

**κρείσσω** more powerful; better  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess  
**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**παραινέω** recommend, exhort, warn  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km  
**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold, help  
**σταθμάομαι** judge, conclude  
**σταθμόομαι** judge, conclude  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
 ~volunteer  
**τοιόσδε** such

παρασάγγας δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας· ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἔω ἥξειν βασιλέα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι μαχομένον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἡγεῖσθαι, Μένωνα δὲ τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ εὐωνύμου, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ διέταξε.

Μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἦκοντες αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ περὶ τῆς βασιλέως στρατιᾶς. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνεβουλευέτο τε πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο καὶ αὐτὸς παρήνει θαρρύνων τοιάδε.

«ὦ Ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ νομίζων ἀμείνονας καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων ὑμᾶς εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο προσέλαβον. ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς κέκτησθε καὶ ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω. εὐ γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι

|ca. 5 km δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ |authority;  
|validity

|scrutiny ποιεῖται τῶν |Greek καὶ τῶν |non-Greek ἐν τῷ

πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας· ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν |lie upon; approach

ἔω ἥξειν βασιλέα σὺν τῷ |army μαχομένον· καὶ

ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ |horn; γέεισθαι, Μένωνα  
|military

δὲ τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ |honored; left-hand δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ

|arrange,  
|array

Μετὰ δὲ τὴν |scrutiny ἅμα τῇ |lie upon; approach ἔκοντες

|deserting, παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως |announce, or- Κύρω  
|defecting |der, promise

περὶ τῆς βασιλέως |army Κῦρος δὲ |call together τοὺς

στρατηγούς καὶ |captain τῶν |Greek |give advice;  
|(mid) consult

τε πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο καὶ αὐτὸς |recommend, ἑρύνων  
|exhort, warn

|such

«ὦ Ἄνδρες |Greek , οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀπορῶν |non-Greek

συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ νομίζων |better καὶ

κρείττους πολλῶν |non-Greek ὑμᾶς εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο

|add, borrow, ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας  
|take hold, help

ἧς |acquire καὶ ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ |consider εὖ γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι  
|happy

stages—twelve parasangs. Now, on the third stage, about midnight, Cyrus held a review of the Hellenes and Asiatics in the plain, expecting that the king would arrive the following day with his army to offer battle. He gave orders to Clearchus to take command of the right wing, and to Menon the Thessalian of the left, while he himself undertook to the disposition of his own forces in person.

After the review, with the first approach of day, deserters from the great king arrived, bringing Cyrus information about the royal army. Then Cyrus summoned the generals and captains of the Hellenes, and held a council of war to arrange the plan of battle. He took this opportunity also to address the following words of compliment and encouragement to the meeting:

«Men of Hellas,” he said, «it is certainly not from dearth of barbarians to fight my battles that I put myself at your head as my allies; but because I hold you to be better and stronger than many barbarians. That is why I took you. See then that you prove yourselves to be men worthy of the liberty which you possess, and which I envy you. Liberty—it is a thing which, be well assured, I would choose

*vocabulary*

**ἄγών** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**αἰσχύνω** (ō) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar

**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit

**ἐλευθερία** freedom

**ἔνιοι** some

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion

**ζηλωτός** enviable

**κραυγή** screaming, shouting

**μεσημβρία** midday; the south

**μέχρι** as far as, until

**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics

**οἴκοι** at home ~economics

**πατρῷος** of the father(s), ancestral

~paternal

**πατρῷος** of the father(s), ancestral

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy

**πολλαπλάσιος** many times more

**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

**προσίημι** be allowed near

**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do

~ischemia

**φυγᾶς** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee

~fugitive

**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive

τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἐλοίμην ἂν ἀντὶ ὧν ἔχω πάντων καὶ ἄλλων  
πολλαπλασίῳ. ὅπως δὲ καὶ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἶον ἔρχεσθε  
ἀγῶνα, ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω. τὸ μὲν γὰρ πλῆθος πολὺν  
καὶ κραυγὴ πολλῇ ἐπίασιν· ἂν δὲ ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε, τὰ  
ἄλλα καὶ αἰσχύνεσθαι μοι δοκῶ οἴους ἡμῖν γνώσεσθε τοὺς  
ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους. ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν ὄντων  
καὶ εὖ τῶν ἐμῶν γενομένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν οἴκαδε  
βουλόμενον ἀπιέναι τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτὸν ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν,  
πολλοὺς δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ ἐλέσθαι ἀντὶ τῶν  
οἴκοι.»

Ἐνταῦθα «Γαυλίτης παρών, φygὰς Σάμιος, πιστὸς δὲ  
Κύρω, εἶπεν· Καὶ μὴν, ὦ Κῦρε, λέγουσί τινες ὅτι  
πολλὰ ὑπισχνῇ νῦν διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κινδύνου  
προσιόντος, ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηταί τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαι σέ  
φασιν· ἔνιοι δὲ οὐδ' εἰ μεμνήῳ τε καὶ βούλοιο δύνασθαι  
ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνῇ.»

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔλεξεν ὁ Κῦρος· «Ἄλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ  
ἄνδρες, ἀρχὴ πατρώα πρὸς μὲν μεσημβρίαν μέχρι



τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἐλοίμην ἂν ἀντὶ ὧν ἔχω πάντων καὶ ἄλλων  
πολλαπλασίων. ὅπως δὲ καὶ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἶον ἔρχεσθε  
|gathering ἡμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω. τὸ μὲν γὰρ πλῆθος πολὺ  
|place  
καὶ |screaming, ἁλλῇ ἐπίασιν· ἂν δὲ ταῦτα |raise; endure, τὰ  
|shouting  
ἄλλα καὶ |spoil, disgrace μοι δοκῶ οἴους ἡμῖν γνώσεσθε τοὺς  
ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους. ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν ὄντων  
καὶ εὖ τῶν ἐμῶν γενομένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν |homeward  
βουλόμενον ἀπιέναι τοῖς |at |enviable ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν,  
|home  
πολλοὺς δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ ἐλέσθαι ἀντὶ τῶν  
|at home  
|there, here «Γαυλίτης παρών, φυγὰς Σάμιος, |faithful; ὁ  
|trustworthy  
Κύρω, εἶπεν· Καὶ μὴν, ὦ Κῦρε, λέγουσί τινες ὅτι  
πολλὰ |promise, νῦν διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κινδύνου  
|agree  
προσιόντος, ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηταί τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαί σε  
φασιν· |some δὲ οὐδ' εἰ μεμνήῃό τε καὶ βούλοιο δύνασθαι  
ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα |promise, . »  
|agree  
Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔλεξεν ὁ Κῦρος· «Ἄλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ  
ἄνδρες, ἀρχὴ πατρώα πρὸς μὲν |midday; the|as far as, until  
|south

in preference to all my other possessions, multiplied many times. But I would like you to know into what sort of struggle you are going: learn its nature from one who knows. Their numbers are great, and they come on with much noise; but if you can hold out against these two things, I confess I am ashamed to think, what a sorry set of folk you will find the inhabitants of this land to be. But you are men, and brave you must be, being men: it is agreed; then if you wish to return home, any of you, I undertake to send you back, in such sort that your friends at home shall envy you; but I flatter myself I shall persuade many of you to accept what I will offer you here, in lieu of what you left at home."

Here Gaulites, a Samian exile, and a trusty friend of Cyrus, being present, exclaimed: «Ay, Cyrus, but some say you can afford to make large promises now, because you are in the crisis of impending danger; but let matters go well with you, will you recollect? They shake their heads. Indeed, some add that, even if you did recollect, and were ever so willing, you would not be able to make good all your promises, and repay."

When Cyrus heard that, he answered: «You forget, sirs, my father's empire stretches southwards to a region

*vocabulary*

ἀμαχεί unresisted

ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp

ἄρκτος (f) bear

ἄρnuμαι get, win

διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion

ἐγκρατής firm, powerful

εἴπερ if indeed

εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion

εἰσίζομαι take one's place

Ἑλληγν Greek

ἐμπίμπλημι fill with

ἐξαγγέλλω bring news out ~angel

ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go searching through

καῦμα -τος (n, 3) heat ~caustic

μέχρι as far as, until

ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia

νῆ yea

οἰκέω inhabit ~economics

ὀπισθεν behind, hereafter

παρακελεύομαι recommend, encourage

πρόθυμος (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume

σατραπεύω be a satrap

στέφανος ring

χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

οὐ διὰ καῦμα οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ ἄρκτον μέχρι οὐ διὰ χειμῶνα· τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων πάντα σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. ἦν δ' ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι. ὥστε οὐ τοῦτο δέδοικα, μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ὅ τι δῶ ἐκάστῳ τῶν φίλων, ἂν εὖ γένηται, ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ἱκανοὺς οἷς δῶ. ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ στέφανον ἐκάστῳ χρυσοῦν δώσω.»

Οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοί τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθυμότεροι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξήγγελλον. εἰσήσαν δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἷ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινὲς ἀξιοῦντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσται, ἐὰν κρατήσωσιν. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιμπλὰς ἀπάντων τὴν γνώμην ἀπέπεμπε. παρεκελεύοντο δὲ αὐτῷ πάντες ὅσοιπερ διελέγοντο μὴ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὅπισθεν ἐαυτῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ᾧδὲ πως ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· «Οἷ γάρ σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν;» «Νὴ Δί,» ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, «εἴπερ γε Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδός ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ ἀμαχεῖ

οὐ διὰ |heat οὐ δύνανται |inhabit ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ  
 |bear |as far as, until |winter, storm τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων  
 πάντα |be a satrap οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. ἦν δ'  
 ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους τούτων  
 |firm, ποιῆσαι. ὥστε οὐ τοῦτο δέδοικα, μὴ οὐκ ἔχω  
 |powerful ὅ τι δῶ ἐκάστω τῶν φίλων, ἂν εὖ γένηται, ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ  
 ἔχω ἱκανοὺς οἷς δῶ. ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν |Greek καὶ |ring  
 ἐκάστω χρυσοῦν δώσω.»

Οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοὶ τε ἦσαν πολὺν |willing, eager  
 καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις |bring news out εἰσῆσαν δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἷ  
 τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων |Greek τινὲς ἀξιούντες  
 εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσται, ἐὰν κρατήσωσιν. ὁ δὲ |fill with  
 ἀπάντων τὴν γνώμην |send away . παρεκελεύοντο δὲ αὐτῷ  
 πάντες ὅσοι περ |go through, debate ἵχεσθαι, ἀλλ' |behind,  
 |hereafter ἐαυτῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ᾧ δέ  
 πως ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· «Οἷ γάρ σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ Κῦρε,  
 τὸν ἀδελφόν;» «Νὴ Δι',» ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, «|if indeed Δαρείου  
 καὶ Παρυσάτιδός ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ |unresisted

where men cannot dwell by reason of the heat, and northwards to a region uninhabitable through cold; but all the intervening space is mapped out in satrapies belonging to my brother's friends: so that if the victory be ours, it will be ours also to put our friends in possession in their room. On the whole my fear is, not that I may not have enough to give to each of my friends, but lest I may not have friends enough on whom to bestow what I have to give, and to each of you Hellenes I will give a crown of gold."

So they, when they heard these words, were once more elated than ever themselves, and spread the good news among the rest outside. And there came into his presence both the generals and some of the other Hellenes also, claiming to know what they should have in the event of victory; and Cyrus satisfied the expectations of each and all, and so dismissed them. Now the advice and admonition of all who came into conversation with him was, not to enter the battle himself, but to post himself in rear of themselves; and at this season Clearchus put a question to him: «But do you think that your brother will give battle to you, Cyrus?" and Cyrus answered: «Not without a battle, be assured, shall the prize be won; if he be the son of Darius and Parysatis, and a brother of mine."

In

*vocabulary*

ἀγγέλλω carry a message, announce  
 ~angel  
 ἀριθμός number  
 ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot  
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 αὐτομολέω desert  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 διακόσιοι (ἄ) two hundred  
 δισχίλιοι 2000 ~kilo-  
 δρεπανηφόρος having a scythe or  
 hook  
 Ἕλλην Greek  
 ἐνενήκοντα ninety  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here

ἑξακισχίλιοι 6000  
 ἑξοπλισία muster of troops  
 ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief ~hegemony  
 μυριάς -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad  
 μυρίος (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad  
 παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend  
 ~genus  
 πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
 πεντακόσιοι 500  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 τέσσαρες four ~trapezoid  
 τετρακόσιοι 400  
 ὕστερέω lag, be too late, fail

ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι.»

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἀσπίς μυρία καὶ τετρακοσία, πελτασταὶ δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι, τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα διακόσια. ἄλλοι δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἵππεῖς, ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἦρχεν· οὗτοι δ' αὖ πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως τεταγμένοι ἦσαν.

Τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες τέτταρες, τριάκοντα μυριάδων ἕκαστος, Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας, Ἀρβάκης. τούτων δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα· Ἀβροκόμας δὲ ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης ἡμέραις πέντε, ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων. ταῦτα δὲ ἡγγελλον πρὸς Κῦρον οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως πρὸ τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην οἱ ὕστερον



ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι.»

|there, here δὴ ἐν τῇ |muster of|number ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν  
|troops

|Greek |shield μυρία καὶ |400 , |light troops δὲ

|2000 καὶ |500 , τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κύρου |non-Greek

δέκα |countless, καὶ |chariot |having a scythe ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι.  
|myriad |or hook

τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι

|countless, καὶ |chariot |having a scythe|two hundred ἄλλοι δὲ  
|myriad |or hook

ἦσαν |6000 ἱππεῖς, ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἡρχεν· οὗτοι δ'

αὐτὸν πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως τεταγμένοι ἦσαν.

Τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως |army ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ

στρατηγοὶ καὶ |leader |four , τριάκοντα |countless,  
|myriad

ἕκαστος, Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας, Ἀρβάκης.

τούτων δὲ |be beside, attend' τῇ μάχῃ |ninety |countless,  
|myriad

καὶ |chariot |having a scythe ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα·  
|or hook

Ἀβροκόμας δὲ |lag, be too τῆς μάχης ἡμέραις πέντε, ἐκ  
|late, fail

Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων. ταῦτα δὲ |carry a message, ὥς Κύρον  
|announce

οἱ |desert ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου

βασιλέως πρὸ τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην οἱ ὕστερον

the final arming for battle at this juncture, the numbers were as follows: Of Hellenes there were ten thousand four hundred heavy infantry with two thousand five hundred targeteers, while the barbarians with Cyrus reached a total of one hundred thousand. He had too about twenty scythe-chariots. The enemy's forces were reported to number one million two hundred thousand, with two hundred scythe-chariots, besides which he had six thousand cavalry under Artagerses. These formed the immediate vanguard of the king himself. The royal army was marshalled by four generals or field-marsals, each in command of three hundred thousand men. Their names were Abrocomas, Tissaphernes, Gobryas, and Arbaces. (But of this total not more than nine hundred thousand were engaged in the battle, with one hundred and fifty scythe-chariots; since Abrocomas, on his march from Phoenicia, arrived five days too late for the battle.) Such was the information brought to Cyrus by deserters who came in from the king's army before the battle, and it was corroborated after the battle by

*vocabulary*

**ἄγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

**ἄνω** (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;

upwards, out to sea

**βάθος** -ους (n, 3) depth, height

**βαθύς** high, deep ~bathysphere

**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek

**γέφυρα** (ῠ) dam, dike; bridge

**διαλείπω** leave a gap, space apart

**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal

**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic

**ἐπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion

**ἔρυμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve

**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east

wind

**ἰσχυρός** (ῠ) strong, forceful, violent

**μεταξύ** between

**μέχρι** as far as, until

**ὀργυιά** fathom, arm's length

**ὀρυκτός** dug out

**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km

**παρατείνω** extend, lengthen, torture

**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape

**πάροδος** (f) detour, side way, mountain pass

**πλεθριαῖος** 30 m in size ~plethora

**προσδοκάω** expect

**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic

**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat

**σιταγωγός** (ι) grain-carrying

**σταθμός** cottage; post

**στενός** narrow

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**στρατιά** army ~strategy

**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax

**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph

**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid

ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων ταῦτά ἡγγελλον.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας  
 τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ  
 Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ· ὥετο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ  
 μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέα· κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον  
 τάφρος ἦν ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ὀργυιαὶ πέντε,  
 τὸ δὲ βάθος ὀργυιαὶ τρεῖς. παρετέτατο δὲ ἡ τάφρος ἄνω  
 διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας  
 τείχους. ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχες, ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ  
 ῥέουσai· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι,  
 βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεί ἐν αὐταῖς σιταγωγὰ·  
 εἰσβάλλουσι δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, διαλείπουσι δ' ἐκάστη  
 παρασάγγην, γέφυραι, δ' ἔπεισιν.

Ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ  
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὥς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ  
 εὖρος· ταύτην δὲ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ μέγας  
 ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα.  
 ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάροδον Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρήλθε

ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολέμιων ταῦτα |carry a message,  
|announce

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος |drive out |cottage; post. 1 |ca. 5 km

τρεις |gather, assemble τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ

Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ |non-Greek ὥετο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ

μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέα· κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν |cottage; post. 2τον

τάφρος ἦν |dug out |high, deep ὃ μὲν |width; |fathom, arm's length  
(caps)

τὸ δὲ |depth, |fathom, |arm's extend, lengthen, |the east  
|height |length |torture |wind ἡ τάφρος ἄνω

διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα |ca. 5 km μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας

τείχους. ἔνθα αἱ |ditch,  
|canal , ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ

ρέουσai· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν |width; |30 m in size,  
(caps)

|high, deep ἡ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν |the east  
|wind |grain-carrying

|throw into δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, |leave a gap, δ' ἐκάστη  
|space apart

|ca. 5 km , |dam, dike; bridge 11.

Ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην |detour, pass|narrow μεταξὺ

τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὥς ἑκοσι ποδῶν τὸ

|width; (caps) ἦν δὲ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ μέγας  
|the east wind

ἀντὶ |protection , ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον |go to, approach

ταύτην δὲ τὴν |detour, pass 17 ὁρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρήλθε

those of the enemy who were taken prisoners.

From this place Cyrus advanced one stage—three parasangs—with the whole body of his troops, Hellenic and barbarian alike in order of battle. He expected the king to give battle the same day, for in the middle of this day's march a deep sunk trench was reached, thirty feet broad, and eighteen feet deep. The trench was carried inland through the plain, twelve parasang's distance, to the wall of Media. (Here are canals, flowing from the river Tigris; they are four in number, each a hundred feet broad, and very deep, with corn ships plying upon them; they empty themselves into the Euphrates, and are at intervals of one parasang apart, and are spanned by bridges.)

Between the Euphrates and the trench was a narrow passage, twenty feet only in breadth. The trench itself had been constructed by the great king upon hearing of Cyrus's approach, to serve as a line of defence. Through this narrow passage then Cyrus and his army passed, and found themselves

*vocabulary*

ἀληθεύω speak truth; be true  
 ἀναταράσσω stir up, confuse  
 ἀπογιγνώσκω give up, desist; reject  
 ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot  
 δαρεικός Persian coin  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis  
 ἐνδέκατος eleventh ~decimal  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἡμελημένως neglected  
 θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
 ἵχνος -εος (n, 3) track, trace  
 κωλύω (ῥ) hinder, prevent  
 μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite

παρέρχομαι pass, escape  
 πορεία gait, march  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 τάλαντον scale, a unit of weight  
 ~talent  
 τάφος (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph  
 τρισχίλιοι 3000 ~kilo-  
 ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do  
 ~ischemia  
 ὑποχωρέω recoil ~heir  
 ὕστεραῖος the next; later  
 φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon  
 χρυσίον (ῥ) gold coin

καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου.

Ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο βασιλεὺς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερά ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵχνη πολλά. ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος Σιλανὸν καλέσας τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δαρεικοὺς τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἐνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ πρότερον θνόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κῦρος δ' εἶπεν· «Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' ἀληθεύσης, ὑπισχνούμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα.» τοῦτο τὸ χρυσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρήλθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἡμελημένως μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ ἄρματος καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν ὄπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ



καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς |ditch

Ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμάχεσατο βασιλεὺς, ἀλλ'

|recoil |visible, <sup>ῆ</sup> -ιν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων  
|conspicuous

|track, πολλά. |there, here Ξῦρος Σιλανὸν καλέσας τὸν  
|trace

Ἀμπρακιώτην |seer ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ |Persian coin|3000

ὅτι τῇ |eleventh ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ πρότερον |rush; sacrifice

εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κῦρος

δ' εἶπεν· «Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται

ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' |speak truth; |promise, agree σοι δέκα  
|be true

|scale, a unit τοῦτο τὸ |gold coin τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ  
|of weight

|pass, escape αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ |ditch οὐκ |hinder, βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου  
|prevent

|army |pass over, cross ᾗξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις

ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ |the next; later ἄρος

ἐπορεύετο |neglected μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ

|chariot καθήμενος τὴν |gait, ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν  
|march

τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ |stir up, confuse

ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν |tool τοῖς |soldier, πολλὰ ἐπὶ  
|mercenary

safe inside the trench. So there was no battle to be fought with the king that day; only there were numerous unmistakable traces of horse and infantry in retreat. Here Cyrus summoned Silanus, his Ambraciot soothsayer, and presented him with three thousand darics; because eleven days back, when sacrificing, he had told him that the king would not fight within ten days, and Cyrus had answered: «Well, then, if he does not fight within that time, he will not fight at all; and if your prophecy comes true, I promise you ten talents.” So now, that the ten days were passed, he presented him with the above sum.

But as the king had failed to hinder the passage of Cyrus’s army at the trench, Cyrus himself and the rest concluded that he must have abandoned the idea of offering battle, so that next day Cyrus advanced with less than his former caution. On the third day he was conducting the march, seated in his carriage, with only a small body of troops drawn up in front of him. The mass of the army was moving on in no kind of order: the soldiers having consigned their heavy arms to be carried in the

*vocabulary***ἄμαξα** wagon**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἄτακτος** disorderly**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek**βοάω** shout**Ἕλλην** Greek**ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ἡνίκα** when**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax**ἰδρώω** sweat ~exude**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy ~loose**καταπηδάω** jump down**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit

~ceratopsia

**κράτος** strength, power; victory

~democracy

**παλτός** brandished, hurled**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage**Πέρσης** Persian**πλήθω** be filled ~plenum**πλησίος** near, neighboring**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in**προφαίνω** show; pass: appear

~photon

**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty,

hastily ~repudiate

**σταθμός** cottage; post**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**τάραχος** upsetness, confusion**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote**χρηστός** useful; brave, worthy

άμαξῶν ἤγοντο καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

### 1.8

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν καὶ πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἡνίκα Πατηγύας, ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον χρηστός, προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἰδρουντι τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόα καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὥς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι· Κῦρός τε καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος τὸν θώρακα ἐνεδύετο καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστον.

Ἐνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ,

|wagon ἥγοντο καὶ |beast of burden

1.8

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν |be filled καὶ |near  
 ἦν ὁ |cottage; post θὰ ἔμελλε |unyoke; , |when Πατηγύας,  
 ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον |useful; , |show; pass: appear  
 ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ |strength, |sweat τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσιν  
 οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν |power; |victory |worthy  
 οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν |shout καὶ |non-Greek καὶ ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι  
 βασιλεὺς σὺν |army πολλῷ |come forward, sur- εἰς  
 μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα δὲ πολὺς |render, come in  
 αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ |Greek καὶ πάντες δὲ |disorderly  
 σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι· Κῦρός τε |jump down ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 |chariot τὸν |breast- |go into, put on ἵνα βὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον  
 |plate  
 τὰ |brandished, τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι  
 |hurled  
 |transmit; order, |prepare, arm καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ  
 |summon,  
 |recommend,  
 |encourage τῶν ἑκάστον.

Ἐνθα δὲ σὺν πολλῇ |zeal; (dat) with ἀντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν  
 |difficulty, hastily  
 τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ |horn; ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ,  
 |military  
 |unit

wagons or on the backs of beasts.

### 1.8

It was already about full market time and the halting-place at which the army was to take up quarters was nearly reached, when Pategyas, a Persian, a trusty member of Cyrus's personal staff, came galloping up at full speed on his horse, which was bathed in sweat, and to every one he met he shouted in Greek and Persian, as fast as he could ejaculate the words: «The king is advancing with a large army ready for battle.” Then ensued a scene of wild confusion. The Hellenes and all alike were expecting to be attacked on the instant, and before they could form their lines. Cyrus sprang from his carriage and donned his corselet; then leaping on to his charger's back, with the javelins firmly clutched, he passed the order to the rest, to arm themselves and fall into their several ranks.

The orders were carried out with alacrity; the ranks shaped themselves. Clearchus held the right wing resting on the Euphrates, Proxenus was

*vocabulary*

**ἀστράπτω** flash lightning  
**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek  
**δείλη** afternoon ~diem  
**διακινδυνεύω** (ὅ) take risks  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἑξακόσιοι** 600  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**ἥνικα** when  
**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax  
**καταφανής** clearly seen  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
**κονιορτός** cloud of dust  
**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram  
**λευκός** white ~light  
**λόγχη** spear point; lot  
**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger

**μελανία** blackness  
**νεφέλη** cloud, fog ~nebula  
**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**οὐπω** no longer  
**παραμηρίδιος** along the thighs  
**πελταστικός** skilled with small shield  
 ~pelt  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**προμετωπίδιος** on the forehead  
**προστερνίδιον** horse's chest covering  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συχνός** long; many; extensive  
**τάχα** quickly, soon; perhaps  
 ~tachometer  
**ὑπαρχος** subordinate  
**χίλιοι** (ι) thousand ~kilo-  
**φιλός** (ι) naked, bare ~epsilon

Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μένων δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. τοῦ δὲ βαρβαρικοῦ ἵππεῖς μὲν Παφλαγόνες εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ Ἀριαῖός τε ὁ Κύρου ὑπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν, Κῦρος δὲ καὶ ἵππεῖς τούτου ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι κατὰ τὸ μέσον, ὠπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ παραμηριδίοις καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος δὲ ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο λέγεται δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας ψιλαῖς ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ διακινδυνεύειν. οἱ δ' ἵπποι πάντες οἱ μετὰ Κύρου εἶχον καὶ προμετωπίδια καὶ προστερνίδια· εἶχον δὲ καὶ μαχαίρας οἱ ἵππεῖς Ἑλληνικάς.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὐπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμοι· ἥνικα δὲ δειλὴ ἐγίγνετο, ἐφάνη κοινορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ συχνῷ ὕστερον ὥσπερ μελανία τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολὺ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίγνοντο, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἦσπραπτε καὶ λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις



Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μένων δὲ

καὶ τὸ |army τὸ |honored; |horn; ὅρχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ.  
 |left-hand |military  
 τοῦ δὲ |non-Greek ἵππεῖς μὲν Παφλαγόνες εἰς χιλίους  
 |unit

παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν

|skilled with, ἐν δὲ τῷ |honored; left-hand ὅτε τε ὁ Κύρου  
 |small shield

|subordinate καὶ τὸ ἄλλο |non-Greek, Κῦρος δὲ καὶ ἵππεῖς

τούτου ὅσον |600 κατὰ τὸ μέσον, |prepare, arm |breastplate

μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ |along the thighs καὶ |helmet; ship's ram πλὴν

Κύρου· Κῦρος δὲ |naked, bare τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην

καθίστατο λέγεται δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας |naked, bare

κεφαλαῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ |take risks οἱ δ' ἵπποι πάντες

οἱ μετὰ Κύρου εἶχον καὶ |on the forehead καὶ |horse's chest  
 |covering

εἶχον δὲ καὶ |knife οἱ ἵππεῖς Ἑλληνικάς.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ |no |clearly seen ἦσαν οἱ  
 |longer

πολέμιοι· |when δὲ |afternoon, νητο, ἐφάνη |cloud of dust ὥστε

|cloud, fog ὑκί, χρόνῳ δὲ |long; many; ρον ὥστερ |blackness is  
 |extensive

ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολὺ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίνοντο, |quickly, soon;  
 |perhaps

δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις |flash lightning· |spear καὶ αἱ τάξεις  
 |point;  
 |lot

next, and after him the rest, while Menon with his troops held the Hellenic left. Of the Asiatics, a body of Paphlagonian cavalry, one thousand strong, were posted beside Clearchus on the right, and with them stood the Hellenic peltasts. On the left was Ariaeus, Cyrus's second in command, and the rest of the barbarian host. Cyrus was with his bodyguard of cavalry about six hundred strong, all armed with corselets like Cyrus, and cuirasses and helmets; but not so Cyrus: he went into battle with head unhelmeted. So too all the horses with Cyrus wore forehead-pieces and breast-pieces, and the troopers carried short Hellenic swords.

It was now mid-day, and the enemy was not yet in sight; but with the approach of afternoon was seen dust like a white cloud, and after a considerable interval a black pall as it were spread far and high above the plain. As they came nearer, very soon was seen here and there a glint of bronze and spear-points; and the ranks

*vocabulary*

**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**ἀνυστός** feasible  
**ἄξων** ἄξονος (m, 3) axle ~axon  
**ἀποτείνω** extend, prolong  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βοάω** shout  
**βραδύς** slow, dull, late ~Sp.~gordo  
**γεροφόρος** wicker shield bearer  
**διακόπτω** cut through, interrupt  
**διαλείπω** leave a gap, space apart  
**δίφρος** seat, chariot box ~bear  
**δρεπανηφόρος** having a scythe or hook  
**δρέπανον** sickle ~dermatology  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἐρμηνεύς** -ος (m) interpreter  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**ἡσυχῇ** quietly; somewhat  
**καταφανής** clearly seen

**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**λευκοθώραξ** with white cuirass  
**ξύλινος** wooden  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite  
**παρακελεύομαι** recommend, encourage  
**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip ~elastic  
**πλάγιος** sideways; treacherous  
**πλαίσιον** frame, scaffolding  
**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of ~plethora  
**ποδήρης** foot-length  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion  
**σιγά** silence  
**σιγάω** (ī) be silent  
**συχνός** long; many; extensive  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie ~pseudo-

καταφανείς ἐγίγνοντο. καὶ ἦσαν ἵππεῖς μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ γερροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλῖται σὺν ποδηήρεσι ξυλίναις ἀσπίσιν. Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι· ἄλλοι δ' ἵππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται.

Πάντες δ' οὗτοι κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο. πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἄρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἐκ τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον ἀποτεταμένα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς δίφροις εἰς γῆν βλέποντα, ὥς διακόπτειν ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. ἡ δὲ γνώμη ἦν ὥς εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα καὶ διακόψοντα. ὁ μέντοι Κῦρος εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο τοῖς Ἑλλησι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐφεύσθη τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ κραυγὴ ἀλλὰ σιγὴ ὥς ἀνυστὸν καὶ ἡσυχῇ ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως προσῆσαν.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι τῷ ἐρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόα

|clearly seen ἐγίγνοντο. καὶ ἦσαν ἵππεῖς μὲν |with white cuirass  
 ἐπὶ τοῦ |honored; left-hand.. λεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο  
 τούτων ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ |wicker shield, ἐχόμενοι δὲ  
 |bearer  
 ὀπλῖται σὺν |foot-length |wooden ἀσπίσιν. Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὔτοι  
 ἐλέγοντο εἶναι· ἄλλοι δ' ἵππεῖς, ἄλλοι |archer

Πάντες δ' οὔτοι κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν |frame, |full, complete; ὕπων  
 |scaffolding(+gen) full of  
 ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο. πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν |chariot

|leave a gap, |long; many; ἄλλήλων τὰ δὴ |having a scythe  
 |space apart |extensive |or hook  
 καλούμενα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ |sickle ἐκ τῶν |axle εἰς

πλάγιον |extend, prolong καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς δίφροις εἰς γῆν  
 βλέποντα, ὥς |cut through, ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. ἡ δὲ  
 |interrupt  
 γνώμη ἦν ὥς εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν |Greek ἐλῶντα

καὶ |cut through, ὁ μέντοι Κῦρος εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας  
 |interrupt

παρεκελεύετο τοῖς |Greek τὴν |screaming, ὦν βαρβάρων  
 |shouting

ἀνέχεσθαι, |be false, deceive; οὐ γὰρ |screaming, ἡ δὲ  
 |(mid) to lie |shouting

|feasible καὶ |quietly; ἴσῳ καὶ |slow, dull, approach  
 |somewhat |late

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος |pass, outstrip αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι τῷ

|interpreter ἢ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ |shout

could plainly be distinguished. On the left were troopers wearing white cuirasses. That is Tissaphernes in command, they said, and next to these a body of men bearing wicker-shields, and next again heavy-armed infantry, with long wooden shields reaching to the feet. These were the Egyptians, they said, and then other cavalry, other bowmen.

All were in national divisions, each nation marching in densely-crowded squares. And all along their front was a line of chariots at considerable intervals from one another—the famous scythe-chariots, as they were named—having their scythes fitted to the axle-trees and stretching out slantwise, while others protruded under the chariot-seats, facing the ground, so as to cut through all they encountered. The design was to let them dash full speed into the ranks of the Hellenes and cut them through.

Curiously enough the anticipation of Cyrus, when at the council of war he admonished the Hellenes not to mind the shouting of the Asiatics, was not justified. Instead of shouting, they came on in deep silence, softly and slowly, with even tread.

At this instant, Cyrus, riding past in person, accompanied by Pigres, his interpreter, and three or four others, called aloud to Clearchus to advance

*vocabulary*

ἀποβλέπω stare at, adore  
 ἀποσπάω tear/drag away  
 ἄρνυμαι get, win  
 βαρβαρικός non-Greek  
 ἐκατέρωθεν on both sides  
 ἐκατέρωσε to either side, both ways  
 ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go  
 searching through  
 εὐώνυμος honored; left-hand  
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
 καταθεάομαι look down upon  
 κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
 κυκλόω circle, encircle  
 μέλος -ους (n, 3) limb; melody  
 μέλω concern, interest, be one's  
 responsibility

όμαλός smooth ~homoerotic  
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless  
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
 παρελαύνω pass, outstrip ~elastic  
 πελάζω bring/come to, near, into  
 contact with  
 περῖεμι be superior to; be left over;  
 still exist  
 πρόεμι to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
 πρόσεμι approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
 προσίημι be allowed near  
 στῖφος -εος (n, 3) close array  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 συναντάω encounter  
 συντάσσω gather, assemble ~syntax

ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἴη· «κἂν τοῦτ',» ἔφη, «νικῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποιήται.» ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος τὸ μέσον στίφος καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εὐωνύμου βασιλέα τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει περιῆν βασιλεὺς ὥστε μέσον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου ἔξω ἦν ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθεῖη ἐκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλει ὅπως καλῶς ἔχῃ.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα ὁμαλῶς προΐει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ στρατεύματι κατεθεᾶτο ἐκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἰς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, πελάσας ὥς συναντῆσαι ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι· ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευε πᾶσιν



ἄγειν τὸ |army κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι  
 ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἴη· «κἂν τοῦτ',» ἔφη, «νικῶμεν, πάνθ'  
 ἡμῖν πεποιήται.» ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος τὸ μέσον |close  
 καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ |array  
 βασιλέα τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει περιῆν βασιλεὺς ὥστε  
 μέσον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου |honored; left-hand  
 ἀλλ' |anyway, nevertheless οὐκ ἤθελεν |tear/drag away τὸ τοῦ  
 ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν |horn; , φοβούμενος μὴ |circle,  
 |military encircle  
 |on both sides , τῷ δὲ Κυρῷ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλει ὅπως  
 καλῶς ἔχοι.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν |non-Greek |army  
 |smooth |to have been δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ  
 |before, earlier  
 μένον |gather, ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ  
 |assemble  
 Κῦρος |pass, outstrip οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ |army  
 κατεθεᾶτο |to either side, |stare at, adore ἵς τε τοὺς πολεμίους  
 |both ways  
 καὶ τοὺς φίλους. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ  
 Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, |bring/come 'to, |encounter ἤρετο εἴ τι  
 |near, into con-  
 |transmit; order, sum- |set; (mp) come/be αὐτὸν λέγειν ἐκέλευε πᾶσιν  
 |mon, recommend, en- |near, direct, stop  
 |courage

against the enemy's centre, for there the king was to be found: «And if we strike home at this point,” he added, «our work is finished.” Clearchus, though he could see the compact body at the centre, and had been told by Cyrus that the king lay outside the Hellenic left (for, owing to numerical superiority, the king, while holding his own centre, could well overlap Cyrus's extreme left), still hesitated to draw off his right wing from the river, for fear of being turned on both flanks; and he simply replied, assuring Cyrus that he would take care all went well.

At this time the barbarian army was evenly advancing, and the Hellenic division was still riveted to the spot, completing its formation as the various contingents came up. Cyrus, riding past at some distance from the lines, glanced his eye first in one direction and then in the other, so as to take a complete survey of friends and foes; when Xenophon the Athenian, seeing him, rode up from the Hellenic quarter to meet him, asking him whether he had any orders to give. Cyrus, pulling up his horse, begged him

*vocabulary*

**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;

(intrans) ride away

**ἄρνημαι** get, win

**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**διέχω** pass through; be apart

**δουπέω** to thud

**δρόμος** running, racing ground

~hippodrome

**ἐκκλίνω** (i) turn away, back down,

shun

**ἐκχυμαίνω** (ō) bulge out ~accumulate

**ἐλελίζω** shake; turn, rally ~helix

**Ἑλλήν** Greek

**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at

**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go

searching through

**ἡνίκα** when

**θέω** run, run for

**θόρυβος** noise, clamor

**νίκη** (i) victory ~Nike

**παιανίζω** (ā) chant in victory

**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage

**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape

**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)

**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters

**σύνθημα** -τος (n, 3) agreed signal

**σφάγιον** victim, sacrifice

**σωτήρ** -ος (m) savior

**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit

**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid

**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow

**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a  
person behind ~eclipse

**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle

~phalanx

**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter

~diphthong

ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια καλά.

Ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἷη. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ ὃς ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὅ τι εἷη τὸ σύνθημα. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· «Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη.» ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούσας, «Ἀλλὰ δέχομαί τε,» ἔφη, «καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω.» ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν ἀπήλαυνε.

Καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τῷ φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἡνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἤρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. ὥς δὲ πορευομένων ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον ἤρξατο δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγγαντο πάντες οἷον τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθρον. λέγουσι δέ τινες ὥς καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἐδούπησαν φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις. πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι.

ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ <sup>|victim,</sup> καλὰ.  
<sup>|sacrifice</sup>

Ταῦτα δὲ λέγων <sup>|noise,</sup> ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος,  
<sup>|clamor</sup>  
καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ <sup>|noise,</sup> εἷη. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι  
<sup>|clamor</sup>

<sup>|agreed</sup> <sup>|pass, escape</sup> δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ ὃς ἐθαύμασε  
<sup>|signal</sup>

τίς <sup>|transmit; order, sumḿon, ὁ ὅ τι εἷη τὸ</sup> <sup>|agreed</sup> ὁ  
<sup>|recommend, encourage</sup> <sup>|signal</sup>

δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· «Ζεὺς <sup>|savior</sup> καὶ νίκη.» ὁ δὲ Κῦρος

ἀκούσας, «Ἀλλὰ δέχομαί τε,» ἔφη, «καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω.»

ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν <sup>|expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans)</sup>  
<sup>|ride away</sup>

Καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ <sup>|four</sup> στάδια <sup>|pass through;|rank of battle</sup>  
<sup>|be apart</sup>

ἀπ' ἀλλήλων <sup>|when</sup> <sup>|chant in victory</sup> οἱ <sup>|Greek</sup> καὶ

ἤρχοντο ἀντίοι ἵεναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. ὥς δὲ πορευομένων

<sup>|bulge out</sup> <sup>τι τῆς</sup> <sup>|rank of battle</sup> . ὃ <sup>|leave (food, person)</sup> <sup>ῥ</sup> ξατο

<sup>|running</sup> <sup>|run</sup> καὶ ἄμα <sup>|make a sound, utter</sup> . ες οἶον τῷ

Ἐνθαλίῳ <sup>|shake; turn</sup> , καὶ πάντες δὲ <sup>|run</sup> . λέγουσι δέ

τινες ὥς καὶ ταῖς <sup>|shield</sup> πρὸς τὰ δόρατα <sup>|to thud</sup>

φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις. πρὶν δὲ <sup>|arrow</sup>

<sup>|arrive at</sup> <sup>|turn away,</sup> <sup>báck|non-Greek</sup> καὶ φεύγουσι.  
<sup>|down, shun</sup>

to make the announcement generally known that the omens from the victims, internal and external alike, were good.

While he was still speaking, he heard a confused murmur passing through the ranks, and asked what it meant. The other replied that it was the watchword being passed down for the second time. Cyrus wondered who had given the order, and asked what the watchword was. On being told it was «Zeus our Saviour and Victory,” he replied, «I accept it; so let it be,” and with that remark rode away to his own position.

And now the two battle lines were no more than three or four furlongs apart, when the Hellenes began chanting the paean, and at the same time advanced against the enemy.

But with the forward movement a certain portion of the line curved onwards in advance, with wave-like sinuosity, and the portion left behind quickened to a run; and simultaneously a thrilling cry burst from all lips, like that in honour of the war-god — eleleu! eleleu! and the running became general. Some say they clashed their shields and spears, thereby causing terror to the horses; and before they had got within arrowshot the barbarians swerved and took

*vocabulary*

**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βοάω** shout  
**δίιστημι** stand apart ~stand  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**ἐκατέρωθεν** on both sides  
**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out  
 ~ppectrum  
**Ἕλληγν** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue  
**ἐξακόσιοι** 600  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡνιοχεύς** -ος (m) rein holder

**ἡνίοχος** rein holder  
**θέω** run, run for  
**ἵππόδρομος** race track ~hippo  
**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κενός** empty, vain  
**κράτος** strength, power; victory  
 ~democracy  
**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
**προεῖδον** look toward, catch sight of  
 ~wit  
**προοράω** see before oneself  
**προσκυνέω** kow tow to; kiss  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἔπεσθαι. τὰ δ' ἄρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κενὰ ἡνιόχων. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ προῖδοιεν, δίσταντο· ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν ἵπποδρόμῳ ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοξευθῆναί τις ἐλέγετο.

Κῦρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὥς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὥς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν, ἐπεμελείτο ὅ τι ποιήσει βασιλεὺς. καὶ γὰρ ᾔδει αὐτόν ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὐτῶν ἡγοῦνται, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι, ἣν ἢ ἡ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἐκατέρωθεν, καὶ



Καὶ |there, here ἡ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ |strength, |Greek  
 |shout δὲ ἀλλήλοισι μὴ |run |running, ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἔπεσθαι.  
 τὰ δ' |chariot ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων,  
 τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν |Greek |empty, vain<sup>1</sup>ων. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ  
 προῖδον, |stand apart ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ |seize, understand, catch, overtake;  
 ἐν |race track |panic, be καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον  
 |knocked out  
 παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν |Greek ἐν ταύτῃ  
 τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ |honored; left-hand  
 |shoot an arrow at ἡέγετο.

|authority; ὁρῶν τοὺς |Greek νικῶντας τὸ καθ'  
 |validity  
 αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, |ἡδομαι?: be|kow tow to; kiss  
 |pleased, enjoy;  
 ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ ταῖς αἰχμαῖς αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς |lead out  
 |pleased, enjoy  
 διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν  
 ἑαυτῷ |600 ἱππέων τάξιν, |take care of, ὅ τι ποιήσει  
 |oversee  
 βασιλεὺς. καὶ γὰρ ἦδει αὐτόν ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι τοῦ Περσικοῦ  
 |army καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν |non-Greek ἄρχοντες  
 μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὐτῶν ἡγοῦνται, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν  
 |safe, easy, steady, εἶναι, ἦν ἡ ἡ |strength; body|on both sides, καὶ  
 |careful |of troops

to flight.

And now the Hellenes gave chase with might and main, checked only by shouts to one another not to race, but to keep their ranks. The enemy's chariots, reft of their charioteers, swept onwards, some through the enemy themselves, others past the Hellenes. They, as they saw them coming, opened a gap and let them pass. One fellow, like some dumbfounded mortal on a racecourse, was caught by the heels, but even he, they said, received no hurt, nor indeed, with the single exception of some one on the left wing who was said to have been wounded by an arrow, did any Hellene in this battle suffer a single hurt.

Cyrus, seeing the Hellene's conquering, as far as they at any rate were concerned, and in hot pursuit, was well content; but in spite of his joy and the salutations offered him at that moment by those about him, as though he were already king, he was not led away to join in the pursuit, but keeping his squadron of six hundred horsemen in close order, waited and watched to see what the king himself would do. The king, he knew, held the centre of the Persian army. Indeed it is the fashion for the Asiatic monarch to occupy that position during action, for this twofold reason: he holds the safest place, with his troops on either side of him, while, if he has occasion to despatch any necessary rider along

*vocabulary*

**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**διασπείρω** scatter, dissipate  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
 state ~ballistic  
**ἑξακισχίλιοι** 6000  
**ἑξακόσιοι** 600  
**ἐπικάμπω** bend, make an angle  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere  
**καθοράω** look down ~panorama  
**κατακόπτω** cut down, shatter  
**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon  
 ~eclipse  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
**κύκλωσις** act of surrounding

**ὁμοτράπεζος** messmate  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὀπίσθεν** behind, hereafter  
**παίω** hit  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**στέρνον** breast, chest, seat of feelings  
 ~sternum  
**στῖφος** -εος (n, 3) close array  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia  
**τροπή** rout, turning of an enemy  
 ~trophy  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive  
**χρήζω** need ~chresard

εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι χρήζοιεν, ἡμίσει ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὅμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὥς εἰς κύκλωσιν.

Ἐνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ ὀπισθεν γενόμενος κατακόψη τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακόσιοις νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν.

Ὡς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνν ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι.

Σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὢν καθορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκείνον στῆφος· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν «Τὸν ἄνδρα ὀρῶ,» ἔτετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ

εἴ τι |transmit; order,|need , |half ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι  
 |summon,  
 τὸ |army |recommend, |encourage· καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ  
 |army |anyway, |nevertheless . οὐ Κύρου |honored; |horn;  
 |left-hand |military  
 ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ  
 |unit  
 τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, |bend, make an angle' - |act of surrounding  
 Ἔνθα δὴ Κύρος δείσας μὴ |behind, |γενόμενος |cut down, shatter  
 |hereafter  
 τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ |throw in; inspire τοῖς  
 |600 νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς  
 |flight, |means, |εἰς τοὺς |6000 , καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται  
 |of escape  
 αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν.  
 Ὡς δ' ἡ |rout, |ἐγένετο, |scatter, dissipate καὶ οἱ Κύρου  
 |turning  
 |600 εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι  
 ἀμφ' αὐτὸν |leave behind,, |about οἱ |messmate  
 |abandon  
 καλούμενοι.  
 Σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὢν |look down' |ισιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκείνων  
 |close |καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ |raise; , ἀλλ' εἰπὼν «Τὸν ἄνδρα  
 |array |endure  
 ὁρῶ,» ἔτεο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ |hit κατὰ τὸ |chest καὶ

the lines, his troops will receive the message in half the time. The king accordingly on this occasion held the centre of his army, but for all that, he was outside Cyrus's left wing; and seeing that no one offered him battle in front, nor yet the troops in front of him, he wheeled as if to encircle the enemy.

It was then that Cyrus, in apprehension lest the king might get round to the rear and cut to pieces the Hellenic body, charged to meet him. Attacking with his six hundred, he mastered the line of troops in front of the king, and put to flight the six thousand, cutting down, as is said, with his own hand their general, Artagerses.

But as soon as the rout commenced, Cyrus's own six hundred themselves, in the ardour of pursuit, were scattered, with the exception of a handful who were left with Cyrus himself—chiefly his table companions, so-called.

Left alone with these, he caught sight of the king, and the close throng about him. Unable longer to contain himself, with a cry, «I see the man,” he rushed at him and dealt a blow at his chest, wounding him through the corselet.

*vocabulary*

**ἀκινάκης** -ου (m, 1) Persian short sword

**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute

**βίαιος** by force

**ἐκάτερος** each of two

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἐπισφάζω** slaughter on, as well

**εὐνοια** good will, gift

**θεράπων** -οντος (m, 3) helper, henchman, servant ~therapy

**θώραξ** -ηχος (m) breastplate ~thorax

**ἰάομαι** (i) cure ~pediatrician

**ἱατρός** (ᾱ) physician

**καταπηδάω** jump down

**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity

**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus

**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how

great

**παίω** hit

**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas

**περιπίπτω** embrace; fall in with

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy

**σκηπτούχος** scepter-bearer ~scepter

**σπάω** draw, pull out, pluck ~spatula

**στρεπτός** pliant; type of necklace

~strep throat

**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle

**τιμάω** (i) honor, exalt

**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief

~trauma

**τραῦμα** -τος (n, 3) injury

**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry

~bear

**φέλιον** armlet, anklet

τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὥς φησι Κτησίας ὁ ἰατρός,  
καὶ ἰᾶσθαι αὐτὸς τὸ τραῦμά φησι. παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν  
ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῶ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως· καὶ  
ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ'  
αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου, ὅποσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα  
ἀπέθνησκον Κτησίας λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν.

Κῦρος δὲ αὐτὸς τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ  
αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. Ἀρταπάτης δ' ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ  
τῶν σκηπτούχων θεράπων λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ πεπτωκότα  
εἶδε Κῦρον, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιπεσεῖν  
αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ μὲν φασὶ βασιλέα κελεῦσαί τινα ἐπισφάζαι  
αὐτὸν Κύρῳ, οἱ δ' ἐαυτὸν ἐπισφάξασθαι σπασάμενον τὸν  
ἀκινάκην· εἶχε γὰρ χρυσοῦν· καὶ στρεπτὸν δ' ἐφόρει καὶ  
ψέλια καὶ τᾶλλα ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι Περσῶν· ἐτετίμητο γὰρ  
ὑπὸ Κύρου δι' εὐνοίαν τε καὶ πιστότητα.

## 1.9

Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὢν Περσῶν



|wound, bring<sup>δ</sup>·ὰ τοῦ |breastplate, ὥς φησι Κτησίας ὁ |physician  
|to grief

καὶ |cure αὐτὸς τὸ |injury φησι. |hit δ' αὐτὸν

|throw, (+gen) at |shake, ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν |by force καὶ  
|brandish

|there, here, ἀχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ |authority; ἢ οἱ ἀμφ'  
|validity

αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ |each of two |as/how many/great ἀμφὶ βασιλέα

ἀπέθνησκον Κτησίας λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν.

|authority;<sup>δ</sup> αὐτὸς τε ἀπέθανε καὶ |eight οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ  
|validity

αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. Ἀρταπάτης δ' ὁ |faithful; αὐτῷ  
|trustworthy

τῶν |scepter-bearer |companion λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ πεπτωκότα

εἶδε Κῦρον, |jump down ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου |embrace; fall  
|in with

αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ μὲν φασὶ βασιλέα κελεῦσαί τινα |slaughter  
|on, as well

αὐτὸν Κύρῳ, οἱ δ' ἐαυτὸν |slaughter on, as |draw, pull out τὸν  
|well

|Persian εἶχε γὰρ χρυσοῦν· καὶ |pliant; type ὄffrequentative of φέρω, to  
|short |necklace |carry

|sword, αὐτὰρ ἄλλα ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι Περσῶν· |honor γὰρ  
|armlet, |anklet

ὑπὸ Κύρου δι' |good will, gift ἢ πιστότητα.

## 1.9

Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως |bring about., ἀνὴρ ὢν Περσῶν  
|finish

This, according to the statement of Ctesias the surgeon, who further states that he himself healed the wound. As Cyrus delivered the blow, some one struck him with a javelin under the eye severely; and in the struggle which then ensued between the king and Cyrus and those about them to protect one or other, we have the statement of Ctesias as to the number slain on the king's side, for he was by his side. On the other, Cyrus himself fell, and eight of his bravest companions lay on the top of him. The story says that Artapes, the trustiest among his wand-wearers, when he saw that Cyrus had fallen to the ground, leapt from his horse and threw his arms about him. Then, as one account says, the king bade one slay him as a worthy victim to his brother: others say that Artapates drew his scimitar and slew himself by his own hand. A golden scimitar it is true, he had; he wore also a collar and bracelets and the other ornaments such as the noblest Persians wear; for his kindliness and fidelity had won him honours at the hands of Cyrus.

#### 1.9

So died Cyrus; a man the kingliest and most worthy to rule of

*vocabulary***αἰδήμων** bashful, modest**αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning

~oligarch

**ἀτιμάζω** (ι) insult, dishonor**βασιλικός** royal**ἡλικιώτης** -ου (m, 1) equal in age,  
contemporary**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe**κράτιστος** best**μελετηρός** studying diligently**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to**παιδεύω** raise; train**πεῖρα** an attempt**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce**Πέρσης** Persian**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt**τοξικός** of the bow, bowman**ὑποδεής** inferior; fearful**φίλιππος** horse-loving**φιλομαθής** knowledge-loving

τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν ἀρχαῖον γενομένων βασιλικώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος, ὥς παρὰ πάντων ὁμολογεῖται τῶν Κύρου δοκούντων ἐν πείρᾳ γενέσθαι. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἔτι παῖς ὢν, ὅτ' ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισὶ, πάντων πάντα κράτιστος ἐνομίζετο. πάντες γὰρ οἱ τῶν ἀρίστων Περσῶν παῖδες ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις παιδεύονται· ἔνθα πολλήν μὲν σωφροσύνην καταμάθοι ἂν τις, αἰσχροὺς δ' οὐδὲν οὔτ' ἀκοῦσαι οὔτ' ἰδεῖν ἔστι. θεῶνται δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι, καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες μανθάνουσιν ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι.

Ἐνθα Κῦρος αἰδημονέστατος μὲν πρῶτον τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν ἐδόκει εἶναι, τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὑποδεεστέρων μᾶλλον πείθεσθαι, ἔπειτα δὲ φιλιππότατος καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις ἄριστα χρῆσθαι· ἔκρινον δ' αὐτὸν καὶ τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων, τοξικῆς τε καὶ ἀκοντίσεως, φιλομαθέστατον εἶναι καὶ μελετηρότατον. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ

τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν |ancient, from |μένων |royal  
 |the beginning  
 τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος, ὥς παρὰ πάντων |agree with/to  
 τῶν Κύρου δοκούντων ἐν πείρᾳ γενέσθαι. πρῶτον μὲν  
 γὰρ ἔτι παῖς ὢν, ὅτ' |raise; train καὶ σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ  
 καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισὶ, πάντων πάντα |best  
 ἐνομίζετο. πάντες γὰρ οἱ τῶν ἀρίστων Περσῶν παῖδες  
 ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις |raise; train ἔνθα πολλήν  
 μὲν |discretion, mod-|examine, ἄν τις, |shameful δ' οὐδὲν  
 |eration |observe  
 οὗτ' ἀκοῦσαι οὗτ' ἰδεῖν ἔστι. θεῶνται δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ  
 |honor ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι, καὶ ἄλλους  
 |dishonor ὥστε εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες μανθάνουσιν  
 ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι.  
 Ἐνθα Κῦρος |bashful, modest μὲν πρῶτον τῶν |equal in age,  
 |contemporary  
 ἐδόκει εἶναι, τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ  
 |inferior; fearful μᾶλλον πείθεσθαι, ἔπειτα δὲ |horse-loving  
 καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις ἄριστα χρῆσθαι· ἔκρινον δ' αὐτὸν καὶ  
 τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων, |of the bow, bowman ντίσεως,  
 |knowledge-loving εἶναι καὶ |studying  
 |diligently . ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ

all the Persians who have lived since the elder Cyrus: according to the concurrent testimony of all who are reputed to have known him intimately. To begin from the beginning, when still a boy, and whilst being brought up with his brother and the other lads, his unrivalled excellence was recognised. For the sons of the noblest Persians, it must be known, are brought up, one and all, at the king's portals. Here lessons of sobriety and self-control may largely be laid to heart, while there is nothing base or ugly for eye or ear to feed upon. There is the daily spectacle ever before the boys of some receiving honour from the king, and again of others receiving dishonour; and the tale of all this is in their ears, so that from earliest boyhood they learn how to rule and to be ruled.

In this courtly training Cyrus earned a double reputation; first he was held to be a paragon of modesty among his fellows, rendering an obedience to his elders which exceeded that of many of his own inferiors; and next he bore away the palm for skill in horsemanship and for love of the animal itself. Nor less in matters of war, in the use of the bow and the javelin, was he held by men in general to be at once the aptest of learners and the most eager practiser. As soon as his age permitted, the same

*vocabulary*

**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid)  
muster  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out;  
appoint; (mid) declare  
**ἄρκτος** (f) bear  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow  
~trophy  
**ἐπιφέρω** bestow, impute ~bear  
**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries  
**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall,  
arrive; be proper  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**καταπέμπω** send down, dispatch  
**κατασπάω** pull down  
**μακαριστός** deemed happy  
**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent  
~refurbish

**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian  
governor  
**σπένδω** libate; (mid) make a treaty  
~spontaneous  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**συμπίπτω** fall together, happen  
**συνθέω** go smoothly  
**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis  
**τοιγάρ** therefore  
**τρέω** flee in fear ~tremor  
**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand;  
submit to  
**φιλόθηρος** fond of hunting  
**φιλοκίνδυνος** (ῶ) adventurous,  
foolhardy  
**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
~pseudo-  
**ώτειλή** wound

ἡλικία ἔπρεπε, καὶ φιλοθηρότατος ἦν καὶ πρὸς τὰ θηρία μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος. καὶ ἄρκτον ποτὲ ἐπιφερομένην οὐκ ἔτρεσεν, ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν κατεσπάσθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔπαθεν, ὧν καὶ τὰς ὠτειλὰς εἶχεν, τέλος δὲ κατέκανε· καὶ τὸν πρῶτον μέντοι βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς σατράπης Λυδίας τε καὶ Φρυγίας τῆς μεγάλης καὶ Καππαδοκίας, στρατηγὸς δὲ καὶ πάντων ἀπεδείχθη οἷς καθήκει εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδῖον ἀθροίζεσθαι, πρῶτον μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὐτόν, ὅτι περὶ πλείστου ποιοῖτο, εἴ τῳ σπείσαιοτο καὶ εἴ τῳ συνθοῖτο καὶ εἴ τῳ ὑπόσχοιτό τι, μηδὲν ψεύδεσθαι. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἐπίστευον μὲν αὐτῷ αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι, ἐπίστευον δ' οἱ ἄνδρες· καὶ εἴ τις πολέμιος ἐγένετο, σπεισασμένου Κύρου ἐπίστευε μηδὲν ἂν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς παθεῖν.

Τοιγαροῦν ἐπεὶ Τισσαφέρνει ἐπολέμησε, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι Κῦρον εἶλοντο ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους πλὴν Μιλησίων· οὗτοι δὲ ὅτι οὐκ ἤθελε τοὺς φεύγοντας



time of life, conspicuous, contemporaries  
 con-|fond of hunting ἦν καὶ πρὸς τὰ θηρία  
 fool- καὶ |bear ποτέ |bestow, impute  
 hardy

οὐκ |flee , ἀλλὰ συμπίπτω?: |pull down ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου,  
 fall together,  
 καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔπαθεν συμπίπτω?: τὰς |wound εἶχεν, τέλος δὲ  
 fall together,  
 |kill καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους μέντοι βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς  
 happen  
 |deemed ἐποίησεν.  
 happy

Ἐπεὶ δὲ |send down, dispatch. οὗ πατρὸς |satrap Λυδίας τε  
 καὶ Φρυγίας τῆς μεγάλης καὶ Καππαδοκίας, στρατηγὸς  
 δὲ καὶ πάντων |show, point out; come down, (a day) to |λου  
 appoint; (mid) de-|fall, arrive; be proper  
 πεδίου |press close together; |ον μὲν |display, αὐτόν, ὅτι περὶ  
 (mid) muster |exhibit  
 πλείστου ποιοῖτο, εἴ τῃ |libate; (mid) |εἴ τῃ συνθοῖτο καὶ εἴ  
 |make a treaty  
 τῇ |promise τι, μηδὲν |be false, deceive; γὰρ οὖν ἐπίστευον  
 (mid) to lie  
 μὲν αὐτῷ αἱ πόλεις |entrust, decide, ἐπίστευον δ' οἱ ἄνδρες·  
 allow  
 καὶ εἴ τις πολέμιος ἐγένετο, |libate; (mid) Κύρου ἐπίστευε  
 |make a treaty  
 μηδὲν ἂν παρὰ τὰς |libation, παθεῖν.  
 treaty

Τοιγαροῦν ἐπεὶ Τισσαφέρνει ἐπολέμησε, πᾶσαι αἱ  
 πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι Κῦρον εἶλοντο ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνηους πλὴν  
 Μιλησίων· οὗτοι δὲ ὅτι οὐκ ᾔθελε τοὺς φεύγοντας

pre-eminence showed itself in his fondness for the chase, not without a certain appetite for perilous adventure in facing the wild beasts themselves. Once a bear made a furious rush at him, and without wincing he grappled with her, and was pulled from his horse, receiving wounds the scars of which were visible through life; but in the end he slew the creature, nor did he forget him who first came to his aid, but made him enviable in the eyes of many.

After he had been sent down by his father to be satrap of Lydia and Great Phrygia and Cappadocia, and had been appointed general of the forces, whose business it is to muster in the plain of the Castolus, nothing was more noticeable in his conduct than the importance which he attached to the faithful fulfilment of every treaty or compact or undertaking entered into with others. He would tell no lies to any one. Thus doubtless it was that he won the confidence alike of individuals and of the communities entrusted to his care; or in case of hostility, a treaty made with Cyrus was a guarantee sufficient to the combatant that he would suffer nothing contrary to its terms.

Therefore, in the war with Tissaphernes, all the states of their own accord chose Cyrus in lieu of Tissaphernes, except only the men of Miletus, and these were only alienated through fear

*vocabulary*

ἀδελής (ἄ) fearless ~Deimos  
 ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad  
 ἀλέξω ward off; aid  
 ἅπαξ once  
 ἀφειδής unsparing, cruel ~aphid  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἐπιδείκνυμι (ῶ) display, exhibit  
 ἐπιθυμέω (ῶ) wish, covet  
 εὐχή prayer; vow ~vow

κακοῦργος causing evil ~ergonomics  
 καταγελάω laugh at, deride  
 μείων less, smaller  
 ὅπη wherever, however  
 πότε when?  
 προίημι send forth, abandon ~jet  
 προχωρέω proceed, come forward  
 στείβω trample  
 στέρομαι lack, lose  
 τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,  
 punish; aid one who has been attacked  
 φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon

προέσθαι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν. καὶ γὰρ ἔργῳ ἐπεδείκνυτο καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ποτε προοίτο, ἐπεὶ ἅπαξ φίλος αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο, οὐδ' εἰ ἔτι μὲν μείους γένοιντο, ἔτι δὲ κάκιον πράξειαν.

Φανερός δ' ἦν καὶ εἴ τις τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσειεν αὐτόν, νικᾶν πειρώμενος· καὶ εὐχὴν δέ τινες αὐτοῦ ἐξέφερον ὥς εὐχοίτο τοσοῦτον χρόνον ζῆν ἔστε νικήῃ καὶ τοὺς εὖ καὶ κακῶς ποιῶντας ἀλεξόμενος. καὶ γὰρ οὖν πλείστοι δὴ αὐτῷ ἐνὶ γε ἀνδρὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν ἐπεθύμησαν καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ ἐαυτῶν σώματα προέσθαι.

Οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἂν τις εἴποι, ὥς τοὺς κακούργους καὶ ἀδίκους εἷα καταγελᾶν, ἀλλὰ ἀφειδέστατα πάντων ἐτιμωρεῖτο· πολλάκις δ' ἦν ἰδεῖν παρὰ τὰς στειβομένας ὁδοὺς καὶ ποδῶν καὶ χειρῶν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν στερομένους ἀνθρώπους· ὥστ' ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀρχῇ ἐγένετο καὶ Ἑλληνι καὶ βαρβάρῳ μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι ἀδεῶς πορεύεσθαι ὅπῃ τις ᾔθελεν, ἔχοντι ὅ τι προχωροίη.

|send forth, abandon ὁ αὐτόν. καὶ γὰρ ἔργῳ |display, exhibit καὶ  
 ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ποτε προοίτο, ἐπεὶ |once φίλος αὐτοῖς  
 ἐγένετο, οὐδ' εἰ ἔτι μὲν |less, smaller γένοιτο, ἔτι δὲ κάκιον  
 πράξειαν.

|visible, conspicuous ὃ ἦν καὶ εἴ τις τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσειεν αὐτόν,  
 νικᾶν πειρώμενος· καὶ |prayer; vow πρὸς αὐτοῦ |carry off ὥς  
 εὔχοιτο τοσοῦτον χρόνον ζῆν ἔστε νικῆῃ καὶ τοὺς εὖ καὶ  
 κακῶς ποιούντας |ward off; aid καὶ γὰρ οὖν πλείστοι δὴ  
 αὐτῷ ἐνὶ γε ἀνδρὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν |wish, covet καὶ χρήματα  
 καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα |send forth, abandon

Οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἂν τις εἴποι, ὥς τοὺς κακούργους

καὶ |unfair; obstinate, bad ἔλα |laugh at, deride ἀλλὰ |unsparing, cruel  
 πάντων |take vengeance, often δ' ἦν ἰδεῖν παρὰ τὰς  
 |trample ποδοῦς καὶ ποδῶν καὶ χειρῶν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν  
 |lack, lose ἀνθρώπους· ὥστ' ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀρχῇ ἐγένετο  
 καὶ |Greek καὶ |non-Greek μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι |fearless  
 πορεύεσθαι |wherever, however ἤθελεν, ἔχοντι ὅ τι |proceed, come forward

of him, because he refused to abandon their exiled citizens; and his deeds and words bore emphatic witness to his principle: even if they were weakened in number or in fortune, he would never abandon those who had once become his friends.

He made no secret of his endeavour to outdo his friends and his foes alike in reciprocity of conduct. The prayer has been attributed to him, «God grant I may live along enough to recompense my friends and requite my foes with a strong arm.” However this may be, no one, at least in our days, ever drew together so ardent a following of friends, eager to lay at his feet their money, their cities, their own lives and persons.

Nor is it to be inferred from this that he suffered the malefactor and the wrongdoer to laugh him to scorn; on the contrary, these he punished most unflinchingly. It was no rare sight to see on the well-trodden highways, men who had forfeited hand or foot or eye; the result being that throughout the satrapy of Cyrus any one, Hellene or barbarian, provided he were innocent, might fearlessly travel wherever he pleased, and take with him whatever he felt disposed.

However, as all

*vocabulary*

**ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad  
**ἄληθινός** honest, genuine  
**ἀφθονία** abundance  
**διαφερόντως** differently  
**διαχειρίζω** handle, kill  
**δικαιοσύνη** justice  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὕ) display, exhibit  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue  
 ~catastrophe  
**κερδαλέος** clever, wily  
**κέρδος** -ους (n, 3) advantage, cunning  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that  
**λοχαγός** (ἄ) captain  
**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to  
**ὅπου** where  
**πειθαρχέω** obey authority  
**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
**τιμάω** (ἱ) honor, exalt  
**τοιγάρ** therefore  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon  
**φιλοκερδέω** be greedy

Τούς γε μέντοι ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον ὠμολόγητο διαφερόντως τιμᾶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἦν αὐτῷ πόλεμος πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· στρατευόμενος οὖν καὶ αὐτὸς εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας, οὓς ἑώρα ἐθέλοντας κινδυνεύειν, τούτους καὶ ἄρχοντας ἐποίει ἥς κατεστρέφετο χώρας, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλοις δώροις ἐτίμα· ὥστε φαίνεσθαι τοὺς μὲν ἀγαθοὺς εὐδαιμονεστάτους, τοὺς δὲ κακοὺς δούλους τούτων ἀξιούσθαι εἶναι. τοιγαροῦν πολλή ἦν ἀφθονία αὐτῷ τῶν ἐθελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις οἶοιτο Κῦρον αἰσθήσεσθαι.

Εἷς γε μὴν δικαιοσύνην εἴ τις φανερός γένοιτο ἐπιδείκνυσθαι βουλόμενος, περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο τούτους πλουσιωτέρους ποιεῖν τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου φιλοκερδούντων. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἄλλα τε πολλὰ δικαίως αὐτῷ διεχειρίζετο καὶ στρατεύματι ἀληθινῶ ἐχρήσατο. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, οἱ χρημάτων ἕνεκα πρὸς ἐκείνον ἔπλευσαν, ἔγνωσαν κερδαλεώτερον εἶναι Κύρῳ καλῶς πειθαρχεῖν ἢ τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος. ἀλλὰ μὴν εἴ τίς γέ τι αὐτῷ



Τούς γε μέντοι ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον |agree with/to  
 |differently |honor καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἦν αὐτῷ πόλεμος  
 πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· |make an expedition, |ν καὶ αὐτὸς  
 |war, campaign  
 εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας, οὓς ἑώρα ἐθέλοντας |encounter danger; (+inf)  
 |there is a danger that  
 τούτους καὶ ἄρχοντας ἐποίει ἥς |overturn, |χώρας,  
 |subdue  
 ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλοις δώροις |honor ὥστε φαίνεσθαι τοὺς  
 μὲν ἀγαθοὺς |blessed with a good, τοὺς δὲ κακοὺς δούλους  
 |genius  
 τούτων ἀξιούσθαι εἶναι. τοιγαροῦν πολλή ἦν |abundance  
 αὐτῷ τῶν ἐθελόντων |encounter |where τις οἶοιτο Κῦρον  
 |danger; (+inf)  
 αἰσθήσεσθαι. |there is a  
 |danger that  
 Εἷς γε μὴν |justice εἷ τις |visible, |ένοιτο  
 |conspicuous  
 |display, exhibit βουλόμενος, περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο τούτους  
 |wealth ποιεῖν τῶν ἐκ τοῦ |unfair; |be greedy  
 |obsti-  
 καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἄλλα τε πολλὰ διέκρινε αὐτῷ |handle, kill  
 |nate,  
 |bad  
 καὶ |army |honest, |ἐχρήσατο. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ  
 |genuine  
 καὶ |captain , οἱ χρημάτων ἔνεκα πρὸς ἐκείνον ἔπλευσαν,  
 ἔγνωσαν |clever, wily εἶναι Κύρῳ καλῶς |obey authority,  
 τὸ κατὰ μῆνα |advantage, ἄλλὰ μὴν εἷ τίς γέ τι αὐτῷ  
 |cunning

allowed, it was for the brave in war that he reserved especial honour. To take the first instance to hand, he had a war with the Pisidians and Mysians. Being himself at the head of an expedition into those territories, he could observe those who voluntarily encountered risks; these he made rulers of the territory which he subjected, and afterwards honoured them with other gifts. So that, if the good and brave were set on a pinnacle of fortune, cowards were recognised as their natural slaves; and so it befell that Cyrus never had lack of volunteers in any service of danger, whenever it was expected that his eye would be upon them.

So again, wherever he might discover any one ready to distinguish himself in the service of uprightness, his delight was to make this man richer than those who seek for gain by unfair means. On the same principle, his own administration was in all respects uprightly conducted, and, in particular, he secured the services of an army worthy of the name. Generals, and subalterns alike, came to him from across the seas, not merely to make money, but because they saw that loyalty to Cyrus was a more profitable investment than so many pounds a month. Let any man whatsoever render him willing service, such enthusiasm was sure

*vocabulary*

ἀποκρύπτω hide away ~cryptic  
 ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy  
 ἀχάριστος ungracious, unpleasant  
 ~eucharist  
 ἐπεῖπον say besides or afterwards  
 ἐπιθυμέω (ō) wish, covet  
 εὖνοος kindly; favorable  
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
 ἥκιστος least; above all  
 θαρσαλέος bold, over-bold  
 θεραπεύω help, serve ~therapy  
 κατασκευάζω equip, build  
 κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;  
 kill  
 κράτιστος best  
 κρύπτω hide, cover ~cryptic  
 κτάομαι acquire, possess  
 οἰκονόμος steward, housekeeper

ὁμολογέω agree with/to  
 πάομαι acquire ~pathos  
 πλουτέω be rich  
 πονέω work; be busy ~osteopenia  
 προθυμία (ō) zeal, alacrity ~fume  
 προσδίδωμι give as well, a portion  
 πρόσοδος (f) approach, procession; a  
 rent  
 προστάσσω post at, attach to,  
 command  
 πώποτε never  
 συνεργός cooperating; colleague  
 τοιγάρ therefore  
 ὑπηρετέω serve  
 ὑπηρέτης -ου (m, 1) servant, officer  
 φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon  
 φανερόω demonstrate ~photon  
 φθονέω envy

προστάξαντι καλῶς ὑπηρετήσκειν, οὐδενὶ πώποτε ἀχάριστον εἶασε τὴν προθυμίαν. τοιγαροῦν δὴ κράτιστοι ὑπηρετάει παντὸς ἔργου Κύρῳ ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι.

Εἰ δέ τινα ὀρώη δεινὸν ὄντα οἰκονόμον ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου καὶ κατασκευάζοντά τε ἧς ἄρχοι χώρας καὶ προσόδους ποιῶντα, οὐδένα ἂν πώποτε ἀφείλετο, ἀλλ' αἰὲν πλείω προσεδίδου· ὥστε καὶ ἡδέως ἐπόνουν καὶ θαρραλέως ἐκτῶντο καὶ ὁ ἐπέπατο αὐτὸς τις ἤκιστα Κύρον ἔκρυπτεν· οὐ γὰρ φθονῶν τοῖς φανερώς πλουτοῦσιν ἐφαίνετο, ἀλλὰ πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων χρήμασι. φίλους γε μὴν, ὅσους ποιήσαιο καὶ εὖνους γνοίῃ ὄντας καὶ ἱκανοὺς κρίνειε συνεργοὺς εἶναι ὃ τι τυγχάνει βουλόμενος κατεργάζεσθαι, ὁμολογεῖται πρὸς πάντων κράτιστος δὴ γενέσθαι θεραπεύειν. καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ τοῦτο οὐπερ αὐτὸς ἔνεκα φίλων ᾤετο δεῖσθαι, ὥς συνεργοὺς ἔχοι, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειρᾶτο συνεργὸς τοῖς φίλοις κράτιστος εἶναι τούτου ὅτου αἰσθάνοιτο ἕκαστον ἐπιθυμοῦντα.

Δῶρα δὲ πλείστα μὲν οἶμαι εἶς γε ἀνὴρ ἐλάμβανε διὰ

|post at, attach καλῶς |serve , οὐδενὶ |never  
|to, command

|ungracious, εἴασε τὴν |zeal, alacrity. τοιγαροῦν δὴ |best  
|unpleasant

|servant, παντὸς ἔργου Κύρω ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι.  
|officer

Εἰ δέ τινα ὀρώη δεινὸν ὄντα |steward, ἵκ τοῦ δικαίου  
|housekeeper

καὶ |equip, build τε ἧς ἄρχοι χώρας καὶ |approach, pro-  
|cession; a rent

ποιοῦντα, οὐδένα ἂν |never |take away , ἀλλ' ἀεὶ πλείω

προσεδίδου· ὥστε καὶ |sweet |work καὶ |bold

|acquire καὶ ὃ ἐπέπατο αὖ τις |least; Κῦρον |hide, cover  
|above

οὐ γὰρ |envy τοῖς φανερώς |be rich ἐφαίνετο, ἀλλὰ

πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς τῶν |hide away χρήμασι.

φίλους γε μὴν, ὅσους ποιήσαιο καὶ εὖνους γνοίῃ ὄντας καὶ

ἱκανοὺς κρίνειε |cooperating; ἵναι ὃ τι τυγχάνει βουλόμενος  
|colleague

|achieve; cultivate;|agree with/to πρὸς πάντων |best δὴ  
|get; kill

γενέσθαι |help, serve . καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ τοῦτο οὐπὲρ αὐτὸς

ἔνεκα φίλων ᾗετο δεῖσθαι, ὥς |cooperating; ἔχοι, καὶ αὐτὸς  
|colleague

ἐπειρᾶτο |cooperating; οἷς φίλοις |best εἶναι τούτου  
|colleague

ὅτου αἰσθάνοιτο ἕκαστον |wish, covet

Δῶρα δὲ πλείστα μὲν οἶμαι εἰς γε ἀνὴρ ἐλάμβανε διὰ

to win its reward. And so Cyrus could always command the service of the best assistants, it was said, whatever the work might be.

Or if he saw any skilful and just steward who furnished well the country over which he ruled, and created revenues, so far from robbing him at any time, to him who had, he delighted to give more. So that toil was a pleasure, and gains were amassed with confidence, and least of all from Cyrus would a man conceal the amount of his possessions, seeing that he showed no jealousy of wealth openly avowed, but his endeavour was rather to turn to account the riches of those who kept them secret. Towards the friends he had made, whose kindliness he knew, or whose fitness as fellow-workers with himself, in aught which he might wish to carry out, he had tested, he showed himself in turn an adept in the arts of courtesy. Just in proportion as he felt the need of this friend or that to help him, so he tried to help each of them in return in whatever seemed to be their heart's desire.

Many were the gifts bestowed on him, for many and diverse reasons; no one man,

*vocabulary*

**ἀγαστός** wondrous, admirable

**ἄρτος** bread, loaf

**βίκος** jar, cask

**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out

**ἐκπίνω** (i) drink up, consume

**ἐπιλέγω** say re, say also; choose; (mid)  
think over

**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task

**ἐπιτυγχάνω** meet, attain

**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

**ἡμίβρωτος** half-eaten

**ἡμιδεής** half full

**ἡμισυς** half ~hemisphere

**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable

**καλλωπισμός** showing off;  
ornamentation

**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos

**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity

**οὐπω** no longer

**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over;  
still exist

**προθυμέομαι** (ὑ) be eager

**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe

**σκοπέω** behold, consider

**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,  
target ~telescope

**τήμερον** today

**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

**χῆν** -ός (f, 3) goose ~gander

πολλά· ταῦτα δὲ πάντων δὴ μάλιστα τοῖς φίλοις διεδίδου, πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἐκάστου σκοπῶν καὶ ὅτου μάλιστα ὁρῶν ἕκαστον δεόμενον. καὶ ὅσα τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ πέμποι τις ἢ ὡς εἰς πόλεμον ἢ ὡς εἰς καλλωπισμόν, καὶ περὶ τούτων λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα οὐκ ἂν δύναίτο τούτοις πᾶσι κοσμηθῆναι, φίλους δὲ καλῶς κεκοσμημένους μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ νομίζου.

Καὶ τὸ μὲν τὰ μεγάλα νικᾶν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ἐπειδὴ γε καὶ δυνατώτερος ἦν· τὸ δὲ τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων καὶ τῷ προθυμείσθαι χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε μᾶλλον δοκεῖ ἀγαστὰ εἶναι. Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου ἡμιδεεῖς πολλάκις ὅποτε πάνυ ἡδὺν λάβοι, λέγων ὅτι οὐπω δὴ πολλοῦ χρόνου τούτου ἡδίονι οἴνῳ ἐπιτύχοι· τοῦτον οὖν σοὶ ἔπεμψε καὶ δεῖταί σου τήμερον τοῦτον ἐκπιεῖν σὺν οἷς μάλιστα φιλεῖς.

Πολλάκις δὲ χῆνας ἡμιβρώτους ἔπεμπε καὶ ἄρτων ἡμίσεια καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐπιλέγειν κελεύων τὸν φέροντα· Τούτοις ἦσθη Κῦρος· βούλεται οὖν καὶ σὲ τούτων



πολλά· ταῦτα δὲ πάντων δὴ μάλιστα τοῖς φίλοις |distribute, send out  
 πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἐκάστου σκοπῶν καὶ ὅτου μάλιστα  
 ὁρώῃ ἕκαστον δεόμενον. καὶ ὅσα τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ  
 πέμποι τις ἢ ὡς εἰς πόλεμον ἢ ὡς εἰς |showing off; or- καὶ  
 |namentation  
 περὶ τούτων λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα  
 οὐκ ἂν δύναίτο τούτοις πᾶσι |marshal, , φίλους δὲ καλῶς  
 |array  
 |marshal, array μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ νομίζοι.

Καὶ τὸ μὲν τὰ μεγάλα νικᾶν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιῶντα  
 οὐδὲν |wonderful; , ἐπειδὴ γε καὶ δυνατώτερος ἦν· τὸ δὲ  
 |admirable  
 τῇ |attention; |be superior to; be ἔλῳν καὶ τῷ |be eager  
 |assigned |left over; still exist  
 |task  
 |gratify , ταῦτα ἔμοιγε μᾶλλον δοκεῖ |wondrous εἶναι.  
 |authority; ῥ ἔπεμπε |jar, cask ὕνου |half full |often ὁπότε  
 |validity  
 πάνν |sweet λάβοι, λέγων ὅτι |no longer, πολλοῦ χρόνου  
 τούτου |sweet οἶνω |meet, τοῦτον οὖν σοὶ ἔπεμψε καὶ  
 |attain  
 δεῖταί σου |today τοῦτον |drink up, consume ἤλιστα φιλεῖς.

|often δὲ |goose |half-eaten ἔπεμπε καὶ |bread |half  
 καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, |say, choose, κελεύων τὸν φέροντα·  
 |think over  
 Τούτοις |be pleased, enjoy ὑλεται οὖν καὶ σὲ τούτων

perhaps, ever received more; no one, certainly, was ever more ready to bestow them upon others, with an eye ever to the taste of each, so as to gratify what he saw to be the individual requirement. Many of these presents were sent to him to serve as personal adornments of the body or for battle; and as touching these he would say, «How am I to deck myself out in all these? to my mind a man's chief ornament is the adornment of nobly-adorned friends.»

Indeed, that he should triumph over his friends in the great matters of welldoing is not surprising, seeing that he was much more powerful than they, but that he should go beyond them in minute attentions, and in an eager desire to give pleasure, seems to me, I must confess, more admirable. Frequently when he had tasted some specially excellent wine, he would send the half remaining flagon to some friend with a message to say: «Cyrus says, this is the best wine he has tasted for a long time, that is his excuse for sending it to you. He hopes you will drink it up to-day with a choice party of friends.»

Or, perhaps, he would send the remainder of a dish of geese, half loaves of bread, and so forth, the bearer being instructed to say: «This is Cyrus's favourite dish, he hopes you will taste it

*vocabulary*

βάρβαρος non-Greek

βίος life ~biology

βιόω live; (mp) make a living ~biology

γεύω taste ~gusto

δηλώω show, disclose

διαπέμπω send out/over

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐμβάλλω throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic

ἐπιμέλεια attention; assigned task

ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral

λέων lion

ὅπου where

πεινάω be hungry

πιστός faithful; trustworthy

πότε when?

προσκαλέω call on, summon

σπάνιος rare, scanty

σπάνις -εως (f) scarcity, rarity

σπουδαιολογέω talk seriously

τεκμήριον sign; proof

τελευτή conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle

τιμάω (i) honor, exalt

ὕπηρέτης -ου (m, 1) servant, officer

χίλος (i) fodder

γεύσασθαι. ὅπου δὲ χιλὸς σπάνιος πάνυ εἴη, αὐτὸς δὲ δύναιτο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἔχειν ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, διαπέμπων ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα ἄγουσιν ἵπποις ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλόν, ὥς μὴ πεινῶντες τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ φίλους ἄγωσιν.

Εἰ δὲ δὴ ποτε πορεύοιτο καὶ πλείστοι μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλὼν τοὺς φίλους ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὥς δηλοῖη οὓς τιμᾷ. ὥστε ἐγὼ μὲν γε, ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω, οὐδένα κρίνω ὑπὸ πλειόνων πεφιλησθαι οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων. τεκμήριον δὲ τούτου καὶ τόδε. παρὰ μὲν Κύρου δούλου ὄντος οὐδεὶς ἀπῆει πρὸς βασιλέα, πλὴν Ὀρόντας ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ οὗτος δὴ ὦν ᾧετο πιστόν οἱ εἶναι ταχὺ αὐτὸν ἡῦρε Κύρον ἀπῆλθον, ἐπειδὴ πολέμοι ἀλλήλοις λέως πολλοὶ πρὸς Κῦρον ἀπῆλθον, ἐπειδὴ πολέμοι ἀλλήλοις ἐγένοντο, καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἀγαπώμενοι, νομίζοντες παρὰ Κύρῳ ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ ἀξιωτέρας ἂν τιμῆς τυγχάνειν ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ.

Μέγα δὲ τεκμήριον καὶ τὸ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου

γεύσασθαι. |where δὲ |fodder σπάνιος πάνυ εἷη, αὐτὸς δὲ  
 δύναιτο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἔχειν |servant,  
 |officer  
 καὶ διὰ τὴν |attention; as-|send out/over ἡκέλευε τοὺς φίλους  
 |signed task  
 τοῖς τὰ ἐαυτῶν σώματα ἄγουσιν ἵπποις |throw in; inspire ἢ  
 τὸν |fodder, ὥς μὴ |be hungry τοὺς ἐαυτοῦ φίλους ἄγῳσιν.

Εἰ δὲ δὴ ποτε πορεύοιτο καὶ πλείστοι μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι,  
 |call on, summon ὅς φίλους |talk seriously , ὥς |show,  
 |disclose  
 οὓς |honor ὥστε ἐγὼ μὲν γε, ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω, οὐδένα  
 κρίνω ὑπὸ πλειόνων πεφιλησθαι οὔτε |Greek οὔτε  
 |non-Greek . |sign; proof δὲ τούτου καὶ τόδε. παρὰ μὲν  
 Κύρου δούλου ὄντος οὐδεὶς ἀπῆει πρὸς βασιλέα, πλὴν  
 Ὀρόντας |do, try, attack καὶ οὗτος δὴ ὃν ᾤετο |faithful; -  
 |trustworthy  
 εἶναι ταχὺ αὐτὸν ἡῦρε Κύρον ἀπῆλθον, ἐπειδὴ πολέμιοι  
 ἀλλήλοις |lion πολλοὶ πρὸς Κῦρον ἀπῆλθον, ἐπειδὴ  
 πολέμιοι ἀλλήλοις ἐγένοντο, καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα  
 ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἀγαπώμενοι, νομίζοντες παρὰ Κύρῳ ὄντες  
 ἀγαθοὶ ἀξιοτέρας ἂν τιμῆς τυγχάνειν ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ.

Μέγα δὲ |sign; proof καὶ τὸ ἐν τῇ |conclusion, ὃ βίου  
 |fulfilment

yourself.” Or, perhaps, there was a great dearth of provender, when, through the number of his servants and his own careful forethought, he was enabled to get supplies for himself; at such times he would send to his friends in different parts, bidding them feed their horses on his hay, since it would not do for the horses that carried his friends to go starving.

Then, on any long march or expedition, where the crowd of lookers-on would be large, he would call his friends to him and entertain them with serious talk, as much as to say, «These I delight to honour.”

So that, for myself, and from all that I can hear, I should be disposed to say that no one, Greek or barbarian, was ever so beloved. In proof of this, I may cite the fact that, though Cyrus was the king’s vassal and slave, no one ever forsook him to join his master, if I may except the attempt of Orontas, which was abortive. That man, indeed, had to learn that Cyrus was closer to the heart of him on whose fidelity he relied than he himself was. On the other hand, many a man revolted from the king to Cyrus, after they went to war with one another; nor were these nobodies, but rather persons high in the king’s affection; yet for all that, they believed that their virtues would obtain a reward more adequate from Cyrus than from the king.

Another great proof at once of

*vocabulary*

ἀποτέμνω cut off, sever ~tonsure

βέβαιος steadfast; sure

γυμνός naked, unarmed

διαρπάζω make prey of ~harpoon

εἰσπίπτω fall into, rush in

ἐκφεύγω flee from, escape ~fugitive

ἐνθεν thence, whence

ἐνταῦθα there, here

ἐντίθημι load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

εὖνοος kindly; favorable

εὐώνυμος honored; left-hand

ἵππικός of horses ~hippo

ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just

~orthogonal

ὀρθόω stand up

παλλακίς -δος (f) sex slave

παρασάγγης -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
ca. 5 km

πιστός faithful; trustworthy

σοφός skilled, clever, wise

σταθμός cottage; post

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

συντράπεζος messmate

τέσσαρες four ~trapezoid

αὐτῷ γενόμενον ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθὸς καὶ κρίνειν  
 ὀρθῶς ἐδύνατο τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὖνους καὶ βεβαίους.  
 ἀποθνήσκοντος γὰρ αὐτοῦ πάντες οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν φίλοι  
 καὶ συντράπεζοι ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου πλὴν  
 Ἀριαίου· οὗτος δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ  
 τοῦ ἵππικοῦ ἄρχων· ὥς δ' ἦσθετο Κῦρον πεπτωκότα,  
 ἔφυνγεν ἔχων καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν οὐ ἠγείτο.

## 1.10

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Κύρου ἀποτέμενεται ἡ κεφαλὴ καὶ ἡ χεὶρ ἡ  
 δεξιὰ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ διώκων εἰσπίπτει εἰς  
 τὸ Κύρειον στρατόπεδον· καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι  
 ἴστανται, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου  
 εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν ἔνθεν ὠρμῶντο· τέτταρες δ' ἐλέγοντο  
 παρασάγγαι εἶναι τῆς ὁδοῦ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ  
 τά τε ἄλλα πολλὰ διαρπάζουσι καὶ τὴν Φωκαΐδα τὴν  
 Κύρου παλλακίδα τὴν σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν λεγομένην εἶναι  
 λαμβάνει. ἡ δὲ Μιλησία ἡ νεωτέρα ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν  
 ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἐκφεύγει γυμνὴ πρὸς τῶν



αὐτῷ γενόμενον ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθὸς καὶ κρίνειν  
 ὁρθῶς ἐδύνατο τοὺς |faithful; ...ὲ εὖνους καὶ |steadfast; sure  
 |trustworthy  
 ἀποθνήσκοντος γὰρ αὐτοῦ πάντες οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν φίλοι  
 καὶ |messmate ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου πλήν  
 Ἀριαίου· οὗτος δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν ἐπὶ τῷ |honored; left-hand  
 τοῦ |of horses ἄρχων· ὥς δ' ἦσθετο Κῦρον πεπτωκότα,  
 ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ τὸ |army πᾶν οὐ ἡγήετο.

1.10

|there, here δὴ Κύρου |cut off, sever ἡ κεφαλὴ καὶ ἡ χεὶρ ἡ  
 δεξιὰ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ διώκων |fall into, rush in  
 τὸ Κύρειον στρατόπεδον· καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι  
 ἴστανται, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου  
 εἰς τὸν |cottage; post. θεν ὠρμῶντο· |four δ' ἐλέγοντο  
 |ca. 5 km εἶναι τῆς ὁδοῦ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ  
 τά τε ἄλλα πολλὰ |make prey of καὶ τὴν Φωκαΐδα τὴν  
 Κύρου |sex slave τὴν |skilled, ..... καλὴν λεγομένην εἶναι  
 |clever, wise λαμβάνει. ἡ δὲ Μιλησία ἡ νεωτέρα ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν  
 ἀμφὶ βασιλέα |flee |naked, ...ρὸς τῶν  
 |unarmed

his own worth and of his capacity rightly to discern all loyal, loving and firm friendship is afforded by an incident which belongs to the last moment of his life. He was slain, but fighting for his life beside him fell also every one of his faithful bodyguard of friends and table-companions, with the sole exception of Ariaeus, who was in command of the cavalry on the left, and he no sooner perceived the fall of Cyrus than he betook himself to flight, with the whole body of troops under his lead.

#### 1.10

Then the head of Cyrus and his right hand were severed from the body. But the king and those about him pursued and fell upon the Cyreian camp, and the troops of Ariaeus no longer stood their ground, but fled through their own camp back to the halting-place of the night before—a distance of four parasangs, it was said. So the king and those with him fell to ravaging right and left, and amongst other spoil he captured the Phocaeen woman, who was a concubine of Cyrus, witty and beautiful, if fame speaks correctly. The Milesian, who was the younger, was also seized by some of the king's men; but, letting go her outer garment, she made good her escape to the Hellenes, who had been

*vocabulary*

**ἀθροίζω** press close together; (mid)  
muster  
**ἀντιτάσσω** set against  
**ἀρήγω** succor; prevent ~right  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διέχω** pass through; be apart  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντός** within  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite  
**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
great  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
~ion  
**σχευοφόρος** pack animal, porter  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρέφω** turn, veer ~atrophy  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax

Ἑλλήνων οἳ ἔτυχον ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις ὄπλα ἔχοντες καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν ἀρπαζόντων ἀπέκτειναν, οἳ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέθανον· οὐ μὴν ἔφυγόν γε, ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην ἔσωσαν καὶ τᾶλλα, ὅποσα ἐντὸς αὐτῶν καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι ἐγένοντο, πάντα ἔσωσαν.

Ἐνταῦθα διέσχον ἀλλήλων βασιλεὺς τε καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὥς τριάκοντα στάδια, οἳ μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὐτοὺς ὥς πάντας νικῶντες, οἳ δ' ἀρπάζοντες ὥς ἤδη πάντες νικῶντες. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσθοντο οἳ μὲν Ἕλληνες ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις εἴη, βασιλεὺς δ' αὖ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νικῶεν τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν οἴχονται διώκοντες, ἔνθα δὴ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀθροίζει τε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ συντάττεται, ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο Πρόξενον καλέσας πλησιαίτατος γὰρ ἦν, εἰ πέμποιέν τινας ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀρήξοντες.

Ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς δηλὸς ἦν προσιῶν πάλιν, ὥς ἐδόκει, ὅπισθεν. καὶ οἳ μὲν Ἕλληνες στραφέντες

|Greek οἱ ἔτυχον ἐν τοῖς |pack animal, |tool ἔχοντες καὶ  
 |set against πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν |carry off, seize ἰπέκτειναν,  
 οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέθανον· οὐ μὴν ἔφυγόν γε, ἀλλὰ  
 καὶ ταύτην ἔσωσαν καὶ τὰλλα, |as/how |within αὐτῶν καὶ  
 |many/great  
 χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι ἐγένοντο, πάντα ἔσωσαν.

|there, here διέσχον ἀλλήλων βασιλεὺς τε καὶ οἱ |Greek  
 ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια, οἱ μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὐτοὺς  
 ὡς πάντας νικῶντες, οἱ δ' |carry off, seize ὡς ἤδη πάντες  
 νικῶντες. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσθοντο οἱ μὲν |Greek ὅτι βασιλεὺς  
 σὺν τῷ |army ἐν τοῖς |pack animal, porter, βασιλεὺς δ'  
 αὐτῷ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους ὅτι οἱ |Greek νικῶεν τὸ καθ'  
 αὐτοὺς καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν |come, go διώκοντες, ἔνθα δὲ  
 βασιλεὺς μὲν |press close together; |ντοῦ καὶ |gather, , ὁ  
 |(mid) muster |assemble  
 δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο Πρόξενον καλέσας πλησιαίτατος  
 γὰρ ἦν, εἰ πέμποιέν τινας ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ  
 στρατόπεδον |succor;  
 |prevent  
 Ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς |visible, , |approach πάλιν, ὡς  
 |conspicuous  
 ἐδόκει, |behind, καὶ οἱ μὲν |Greek |turn  
 |hereafter

left among the camp followers on guard. These fell at once into line and put to the sword many of the pillagers, though they lost some men themselves; they stuck to the place and succeeded in saving not only that lady, but all else, whether chattels or human beings, which lay within their reach.

At this point the king and the Hellenes were something like three miles apart; the one set were pursuing their opponents just as if their conquest had been general; the others were pillaging as merrily as if their victory were already universal. But when the Hellenes learnt that the king and his troops were in the baggage camp; and the king, on his side, was informed by Tissaphernes that the Hellenes were victorious in their quarter of the field, and had gone forward in pursuit, the effect was instantaneous. The king massed his troops and formed into line. Clearchus summoned Proxenus, who was next him, and debated whether to send a detachment or to go in a body to the camp to save it.

Meanwhile the king was seen again advancing, as it seemed, from the rear; and the Hellenes, turning

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute  
**ἀμφοτέρωθεν** from or on both sides  
 ~ambient  
**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume  
**ἀναπτύσσω** unfold  
**ἀναστρέφω** act: overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἀπαλλαξείω** wish to get rid of  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart  
**αὐτομολέω** desert  
**διελαύνω** drive through, over ~elastic  
**δίιστημι** stand apart ~stand  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**κατακόπτω** cut down, shatter  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit

~ceratopsia  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic  
**ὁμοῦ** together  
**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic  
**παίω** hit  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**περιπτύσσω** enfold  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**σύνοδος** meeting, conjunction  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax  
**συντυγχάνω** fall in with; happen  
**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent

παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς ταύτη προσιόντος καὶ δεξόμενοι, ὁ  
 δὲ βασιλεὺς ταύτη μὲν οὐκ ἦγεν, ἥ δὲ παρῆλθεν ἔξω τοῦ  
 εὐωνύμου κέρατος ταύτη καὶ ἀπῆγεν, ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς  
 ἐν τῇ μάχῃ πρὸς τοὺς Ἑλλήνας αὐτομολήσαντας καὶ  
 Τισσαφέρνην καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ. ὁ γὰρ Τισσαφέρνης ἐν  
 τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ οὐκ ἔφυγεν, ἀλλὰ διήλασε παρὰ τὸν  
 ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας πελταστάς· διελαύνων δὲ  
 κατέκανε μὲν οὐδένα, διαστάντες δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπαιον  
 καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτούς· Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἦρχε  
 τῶν πελταστῶν καὶ ἐλέγετο φρόνιμος γενέσθαι. ὁ δ' οὖν  
 Τισσαφέρνης ὡς μείον ἔχων ἀπηλλάγη, πάλιν μὲν οὐκ  
 ἀναστρέφει, εἰς δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικόμενος τὸ τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων ἐκεῖ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ ὁμοῦ δὴ πάλιν  
 συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἑλλήνων κέρας,  
 ἔδεισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ  
 περιπτύξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτοὺς κατακόψειαν· καὶ  
 ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ κέρας καὶ ποιήσασθαι



παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς ταύτῃ προσιόντος καὶ δεξόμενοι, ὁ  
 δὲ βασιλεὺς ταύτῃ μὲν οὐκ ἦγεν, ἥ δὲ παρήλθεν ἔξω τοῦ  
 |honored; left-hand -s ταύτῃ καὶ |lead away|take up, re- |lì τοὺς  
 |back |cover, resume  
 ἐν τῇ μάχῃ πρὸς τοὺς |Greek |desert καὶ  
 Τισσαφέρνην καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ. ὁ γὰρ Τισσαφέρνης ἐν  
 τῇ πρώτῃ |meeting, -s ἐφυγεν, ἀλλὰ |drive παρὰ τὸν  
 |conjunction |through,  
 ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς |Greek |light troops |over |drive δὲ  
 |kill μὲν οὐδένα, |stand apart δ' οἱ |Greek |over |hit  
 καὶ |throw, (+gen) at -ús· Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἥρχε  
 τῶν |light troops καὶ ἐλέγετο |sensible, γενέσθαι. ὁ δ' οὖν  
 |prudent  
 Τισσαφέρνης ὡς |less, ἥχων ἀπηλλάγη, πάλιν μὲν οὐκ  
 |smaller  
 |act: overturn; mid: δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικόμενος τὸ τῶν  
 |find oneself in  
 |Greek ἐκεῖ |fall in with; happen λεί, καὶ ὁμοῦ δὴ πάλιν  
 |gather, assemble ἐπορεύοντο.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ |honored; left-hand|Greek κέρας,  
 ἔδεισαν οἱ |Greek μὴ |bring to a place ,ὅς τὸ κέρας καὶ  
 |enfold |from or on both αὐτοὺς |cut down, shatter αἱ  
 |sides  
 ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς |unfold τὸ κέρας καὶ ποιήσασθαι

right about, prepared to receive his attack then and there. But instead of advancing upon them at that point, he drew off, following the line by which he had passed earlier in the day, outside the left wing of his opponent, and so picked up in his passage those who had deserted to the Hellenes during the battle, as also Tissaphernes and his division. The latter had not fled in the first shock of the encounter; he had charged parallel to the line of the Euphrates into the Greek peltasts, and through them. But charge as he might, he did not lay low a single man. On the contrary, the Hellenes made a gap to let them through, hacking them with their swords and hurling their javelins as they passed. Episthenes of Amphipolis was in command of the peltasts, and he showed himself a sensible man, it was said. Thus it was that Tissaphernes, having got through haphazard, with rather the worst of it, failed to wheel round and return the way he came, but reaching the camp of the Hellenes, there fell in with the king; and falling into order again, the two divisions advanced side by side.

When they were parallel with the (original) left wing of the Hellenes, fear seized the latter lest they might take them in flank and enfold them on both sides and cut them down. In this apprehension they determined to extend their line and

*vocabulary*

ἀετός eagle ~avis

ἄθροός grouped

ἄλλοθεν from elsewhere ~alien

ἀναβιβάζω make to mount, promote

ἀναστρέφω act: overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy

ἀνατείνω lift, reach out, threaten

ἀποχωρέω go away from, retreat

βάρβαρος non-Greek

βασιλείος kingly

γῆλοφος hill, mound

ἐγγύς near

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐμπίμπλημι fill with

ἐνταῦθα there, here

ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion

ἐπιδιώκω chase after

κώμη village

λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop

μέχρι as far as, until

ξύλον piece of wood ~xylophone

ὀπισθεν behind, hereafter

παιανίζω (ᾱ) chant in victory

παραμείβω pass by ~amoeba

παρατάσσω place beside

πέλτη shield, spear ~pelt

πέλτης -ου (m, 1) type of river fish  
~pelt

πρόθυμος (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume

σημεῖον sign

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

συνάδω sing together, agree

σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion

σχῆμα -τος (n, 3) form, figure

φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle  
~phalanxχωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
~heir

φιλόω (ι) strip bare ~epsilon

ὀπισθεν τὸν ποταμόν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο, καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παραμειψάμενος εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν φάλαγγα ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον μαχοῦμενος συνίηι. ὥς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγγὺς τε ὄντας καὶ παρατεταγμένους, αὐθις παιανίσαντες ἐπήσαν πολὺ ἔτι προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. οἱ δ' αὖ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλὰ ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν ἔφευγον· οἱ δ' ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι κόμης τινός· ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κόμης γήλοφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ ἀνεστράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέα, πεζοὶ μὲν οὐκέτι, τῶν δὲ ἱππέων ὁ λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη, ὥστε τὸ ποιούμενον μὴ γιγνώσκειν. καὶ τὸ βασίλειον σημεῖον ὄραν ἔφασαν αἰετόν τινα χρυσοῦν ἐπὶ πέλτῃ ἐπὶ ξύλου ἀνατεταμένον.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐχώρουν οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσι δὴ καὶ τὸν λόφον οἱ ἱππεῖς· οὐ μὴν ἔτι ἀθρόοι ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν· ἐπιλοῦτο δ' ὁ λόφος τῶν ἱππέων· τέλος δὲ καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. ὁ οὖν Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἀλλ' ὑπ' αὐτὸν στήσας τὸ στράτευμα

ὅπισθεν τὸν ποταμόν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο, καὶ δὴ  
 βασιλεὺς |pass by εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ |form, κατέστησεν  
 |figure  
 ἀντίαν τὴν |rank of battle ὑπερ τὸ πρῶτον μαχόμενος  
 συνήει. ὥς δὲ εἶδον οἱ |Greek ἐγγὺς τε ὄντας καὶ  
 |place beside , αὐθις |chant in victory ἐπῆσαν πολὺν ἔτι  
 |willing, eager ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. οἱ δ' αὖ βάρβαροι οὐκ  
 ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλὰ ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν ἔφευγον· οἱ  
 δ' |chase after μέχρι |village τινός· |there, here ὅ· ἔστησαν  
 οἱ |Greek ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς |village |hill, ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ  
 |mound  
 |act: overturn; mid: ἄμφι βασιλέα, πεζοὶ μὲν οὐκέτι, τῶν  
 |find oneself in  
 δὲ ἰππέων ὁ |neck, |fill with , ὥστε τὸ ποιούμενον μὴ  
 |crest  
 γινώσκειν. καὶ τὸ βασιλῆιον σημεῖον ὁρᾶν ἔφασαν |eagle  
 |on  
 |helmet, a  
 |hilltop  
 τινα χρυσοῦν ἐπὶ πέλτῃ ἐπὶ ξύλου |lift, reach out,  
 |threaten  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ |there, |withdraw, give |Greek , λείπουσι δὴ  
 |here |way to (+dat)  
 καὶ τὸν |neck, crest ὃν αἰς· οὐ μὴν ἔτι |grouped ἰλλ' ἄλλοι  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 |from else-strip bare δ' ὁ |neck, crest ὃν αἰς· τέλος δὲ καὶ  
 |where |helmet, hilltop  
 πάντες |go away from, ὁ οὖν Κλέαρχος οὐκ |make to mount,  
 |retreat |promote  
 τὸν |neck, crest ὃν αἰς· αὐτὸν στήσας τὸ |army  
 |helmet, hilltop

place the river on their rear. But while they deliberated, the king passed by and ranged his troops in line to meet them, in exactly the same position in which he had advanced to offer battle at the commencement of the engagement. The Hellenes, now seeing them in close proximity and in battle order, once again raised the paeon and began the attack with still greater enthusiasm than before: and once again the barbarians did not wait to receive them, but took to flight, even at a greater distance than before. The Hellenes pressed the pursuit until they reached a certain village, where they halted, for above the village rose a mound, on which the king and his party rallied and reformed; they had no infantry any longer, but the crest was crowded with cavalry, so that it was impossible to discover what was happening. They did see, they said, the royal standard, a kind of golden eagle, with wings extended, perched on a bar of wood and raised upon a lance.

But as soon as the Hellenes again moved onwards, the hostile cavalry at once left the hillock—not in a body any longer, but in fragments—some streaming from one side, some from another; and the crest was gradually stripped of its occupants, till at last the company was gone. Accordingly, Clearchus did not ascend the crest, but posting his army at its base, he

*vocabulary*

ἄλευρον flour  
 ἄμαξα wagon  
 ἀναπαύω cause to cease ~pause  
 ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
 διαδίδωμι distribute, send out  
 διαρπάζω make prey of ~harpoon  
 δορπηστός dinner time, evening  
 εἰκάζω liken; conjecture  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἔνδεια a lack, need  
 ἐνδύω go into, put on  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 καθοράω look down ~panorama  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 κράτος strength, power; victory

~democracy  
 λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
 μεστός full  
 οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
 οὐδαμοῦ nowhere  
 πότε when?  
 ποτός potable  
 προελαύνω ride on  
 σιτίον (ῡ) grain, bread, food ~parasite  
 σκευοφόρος pack animal, porter  
 σκηνή tent; stage  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 σφόδρα very much  
 σχεδόν near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia

πέμπει Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου τί ἐστὶν ἀπαγγεῖλαι. καὶ ὁ Λύκιος ἤλασέ τε καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. σχεδὸν δ' ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν καὶ ἥλιος ἐδύετο.

Ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ Κῦρος φαίνοιτο οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς παρήει· οὐ γὰρ ἤδεσαν αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' εἵκαζον ἢ διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψόμενόν τι προεληλακέναι· καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μέιναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγουντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἀμφὶ δορπηστὸν ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς.

Ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλείστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν ἦν, καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ οἴνου, ἃς παρεσκευάσατο Κῦρος, ἵνα εἴ ποτε σφόδρα τὸ στράτευμα λάβοι ἔνδεια, διαδιδούῃ



πέμπει Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν |neck, crest on a  
|helmet, hilltop  
καὶ κελεύει |look down τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ |neck, crest on a |ιν  
|helmet, hilltop  
|announce, or- καὶ ὁ Λύκιος ἤλασέ τε καὶ ἰδὼν |announce, or-  
|der, promise |der, promise  
ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ |strength, |about δ' ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν καὶ  
|power;  
|victory  
ἥλιος ἐδύετο.

|there, here δ' ἔστησαν οἱ |Greek καὶ θέμενοι τὰ |tool  
|cause to cease καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι |nowhere Κῦρος  
φαίνοιτο οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς παρήει· οὐ γὰρ  
ἤδεσαν αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' |likened; ἢ διώκοντα  
|conjecture  
|come, go ἢ |seize, understand, |ride on καὶ αὐτοὶ  
|catch, overtake; (mp)  
ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μείναντες τὰ |pack animal, |there, here  
|porter  
ἄγοιντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς  
ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἀμφὶ |dinner time, evening |tent;  
|stage  
Ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο.  
|seize, understand, catch, ὡν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλείιστα  
|overtake; (mp) happen  
|make prey of καὶ εἴ τι |grain, ἢ |potable ἦν, καὶ τὰς |wagon  
|bread,  
|full |flour καὶ οἶνου, ὥς παρεσκευάσατο Κῦρος, ἵνα  
εἴ ποτε |very much ἡ |army λάβοι ἔνδεια, |distribute, send out

sent Lycius of Syracuse and another to the summit, with orders to inspect the condition of things on the other side, and to report results. Lycius galloped up and investigated, bringing back news that they were fleeing might and main. Almost at that instant the sun sank beneath the horizon.

There the Hellenes halted; they grounded arms and rested, marvelling the while that Cyrus was not anywhere to be seen, and that no messenger had come from him. For they were in complete ignorance of his death, and conjectured that either he had gone off in pursuit, or had pushed forward to occupy some point. Left to themselves, they now deliberated, whether they should stay where they were and have the baggage train brought up, or should return to camp. They resolved to return, and about supper time reached the tents. Such was the conclusion of this day.

They found the larger portion of their property pillaged, eatables and drinkables alike, not excepting the wagons laden with corn and wine, which Cyrus had prepared in case of some extreme need overtaking the expedition,

*vocabulary*

ἄδειπνος without dinner  
 ἀθροίζω press close together; (mid)  
 muster  
 ἄμαξα wagon  
 ἀνάριστος (αἶ) without dinner  
 ἄνοδος impassable; ascent  
 δηλόω show, disclose  
 διαγίγνομαι go through; subsist  
 ~genus  
 διαρπάζω make prey of ~harpoon  
 Ἕλλην Greek

καταλύω unyoke; destroy ~loose  
 κοιμάω put to sleep; (pass) lie down,  
 have sex  
 σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 στρατεύω make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
 συνέρχομαι come together  
 συσκευάζω pack up  
 τελευτάω bring about, finish ~apostle  
 τετρακόσιοι 400

τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ἦσαν δ' αὖται τετρακόσiai, ὡς ἐλέγοντο, ἄμαξαι, καὶ ταύτας τότε οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ διήρπασαν. ὥστε ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν οἱ πλείστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι· πρὶν γὰρ δὴ καταλῦσαι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα οὕτω διεγέγοντο.

## 2

### 2.1

Ὡς μὲν οὖν ἠθροίσθη Κύρῳ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ὅτε ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀρταξέρξην ἐστρατεύετο, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη καὶ ὡς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο καὶ ὡς Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐλθόντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκοιμήθησαν οἰόμενοι τὰ πάντα νικᾶν καὶ Κῦρον ζῆν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμπει σηματοῦντα ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς συσκευασαμένοις

τοῖς |Greek ἦσαν δ' αὐται |400 , ὥς ἐλέγοντο,

|wagon , καὶ ταύτας τότε οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ |make prey of ὥστε

|without ἦσαν οἱ πλείστοι τῶν |Greek ἦσαν δὲ καὶ  
|dinner

|without πρὶν γὰρ δὴ |unyoke; τὸ |army πρὸς  
|dinner |destroy

ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα οὕτω

|go through; subsist

## 2

### 2.1

Ὡς μὲν οὖν |press close together; τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ὅτε ἐπὶ  
(mid) muster

τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀρταξέρξην |make an expedition, ὅσα ἐν τῇ  
|war, campaign

|impassable; ἀχθὴ καὶ ὥς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο καὶ ὥς Κῦρος  
|ascent

|bring about, καὶ ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐλθόντες οἱ  
|finish

|Greek ἐκοιμήθησαν οἰόμενοι τὰ πάντα νικᾶν καὶ Κῦρον

ζῆν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ |show,  
|disclose

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ |come together ἵ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι

Κῦρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμπει |give orders to; ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε  
|show; mark

αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς |pack up

to divide among the Hellenes. There were four hundred of these wagons, it was said, and these had now been ransacked by the king and his men; so that the greater number of the Hellenes went supperless, having already gone without their breakfasts, since the king had appeared before the usual halt for breakfast. Accordingly, in no better plight than this they passed the night.

## 2

### 2.1

And so, as described in the foregoing account, the Greek contingent had been recruited by Cyrus for his campaign against his brother Artaxerxes. They made their way up-country. Cyrus met his end in battle, and the Greeks went back to their camp to sleep, thinking that they had carried the day and that Cyrus lived.

With the break of day the generals met, and were surprised that Cyrus should not have appeared himself, or at any rate have sent some one to tell them what to do. Accordingly, they resolved to put what they had together,

*vocabulary*

**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**βαρύς** heavy ~baritone

**βασιλείος** kingly

**Ἕλλην** Greek

**ἐνθάδε** here, hither

**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite

**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene

**θρόνος** seat, chair, throne ~throne

**καθίζω** set, sit, alight, set up ~sit

**ὅθεν** whence

**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only

**περιμένω** wait for

**προΐημι** send forth, abandon

**προτεραίος** previous to

**σταθμάομαι** judge, conclude

**σταθμόομαι** judge, conclude

**σταθμός** cottage; post

**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle

ἃ εἶχον καὶ ἐξοπλισαμένοις προΐέναι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, ἕως Κύρῳ συμμείξειαν. ἤδη δὲ ἐν ὁρμῇ ὄντων ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνέχοντι ἦλθε Προκλής ὁ Τευθρανίας ἄρχων, γεγονὼς ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος, καὶ Γλοῦς ὁ Ταμώ. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος μὲν τέθνηκεν, Ἀριαῖος δὲ πεφευγὼς ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ εἴη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ὅθεν τῇ προτεραίᾳ ὠρμῶντο, καὶ λέγει ὅτι ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν περιμένειεν αὐτούς, εἰ μέλλοιεν ἦκειν, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ ἀπιέναι φαίη ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας, ὅθενπερ ἦλθε.

Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πυνθανόμενοι βαρέως ἔφερον. Κλέαρχος δὲ τάδε εἶπεν·

«Ἄλλ' ὥφελε μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν· ἐπεὶ δὲ τετελεύτηκεν, ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε βασιλέα καί, ὡς ὀράτε, οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται, καί, εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἦλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλέα. ἐπαγγελλόμεθα δὲ Ἀριαίῳ, ἐὰν ἐνθάδε ἔλθῃ, εἰς τὸν θρόνον τὸν βασιλείον καθιεῖν αὐτόν· τῶν γὰρ μάχην νικόντων καὶ τὸ ἄρχειν ἐστί.»  
ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἀποστέλλει τοὺς ἀγγέλους καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς



ἂ εἶχον καὶ |prepare, arm |send forth, abandon, ὅσθεν, ἕως  
 Κύρω συμμείξειαν. ἤδη δὲ ἐν ὀρμῇ ὄντων ἅμα ἡλίῳ  
 |raise;  
 |endure ἦλθε Προκλῆς ὁ Τευθρανίας ἄρχων, γεγονὼς  
 ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος, καὶ Γλοῦς ὁ Ταμώ. οὗτοι  
 ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος μὲν τέθνηκεν, Ἀριαῖος δὲ πεφευγὼς  
 ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ εἴη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων |non-Greek |whence,  
 |previous to ὠρμῶντο, καὶ λέγει ὅτι ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν  
 |wait for αὐτοῦς, εἰ μέλλοιεν ἥκειν, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ ἀπιέναι  
 φαίη ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας, ὅθενπερ ἦλθε.

Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι |Greek  
 πυνθανόμενοι |heavy ἔφερον. Κλέαρχος δὲ τάδε εἶπεν·

«Ἄλλ' ὥφελε μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν· ἐπεὶ δὲ |bring about,  
 |finish  
 |announce, or- Ἀριαίῳ ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε βασιλέα καί,  
 |der, promise  
 ὥς ὀράτε, οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται, καί, εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἦλθετε,  
 ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλέα. ἐπαγγελλόμεθα δὲ Ἀριαίῳ,  
 ἐὰν |here, ἔλθῃ, εἰς τὸν |chair τὸν βασιλῆιον |set, sit, alight,  
 |hither |set up  
 αὐτόν· τῶν γὰρ μάχην νικῶντων καὶ τὸ ἄρχειν ἐστί.»  
 ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἀποστέλλει τοὺς ἀγγέλους καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς

to get under arms, and to push forward until they effected junction with Cyrus. Just as they were on the point of starting, with the rising sun came Procles the ruler of Teuthrania. He was a descendant of Damaratus the Laconian, and with him also came Glus the son of Tamos. These two told them, first, that Cyrus was dead; next, that Ariaeus had retreated with the rest of the barbarians to the halting-place whence they had started at dawn on the previous day; and wished to inform them that, if they were minded to come, he would wait for this one day, but on the morrow he should return home again to Ionia, whence he came.

When they heard these tidings, the generals were sorely distressed; so too were the rest of the Hellenes when they were informed of it. Then Clearchus spoke as follows: «Would that Cyrus were yet alive! But since he is dead, take back this answer to Ariaeus, that we, at any rate, have conquered the king; and, as you yourselves may see, there is not a man left in the field to meet us. Indeed, had you not arrived, we should ere this have begun our march upon the king. Now, we can promise to Ariaeus that, if he will join us here, we will place him on the king's throne. Surely to those who conquer empire pertains.” With these words he sent back the messengers and with them he sent Cheirisophus the Laconian, and Menon the Thessalian. That was what

*vocabulary*

**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**αὐτομολέω** desert  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**γέρον** wicker object  
**ἐκβάλλω** throw out, fell, let fall  
 ~ballistic  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἐντιμος** (i) honored  
**ἐπιστήμων** skillful, clever ~station  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἐψω** boil, be boiling  
**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
**κόπτω** beat, cut, strike  
**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine  
**ξύλινος** wooden  
**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone

**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager  
**ὀπλομαχία** fighting with heavy arms  
**πέλτη** shield, spear ~pelt  
**πέλτης** -ου (m, 1) type of river fish  
 ~pelt  
**περιμένω** wait for  
**πλήθω** be filled ~plenum  
**πορίζω** bring about, provide  
**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in  
**προσποιέω** give over to; pretend  
 ~poet  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx

Χειρίσοφον τὸν Λάκωνα καὶ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν· καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸς Μένων ἐβούλετο· ἦν γὰρ φίλος καὶ ξένος Ἀριαίου. οἱ μὲν ὥχοντο, Κλέαρχος δὲ περιέμενε.

Τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἐπορίζετο σῖτον, ὅπως ἐδύνατο, ἐκ τῶν ὑποζυγίων κόπτοντες τοὺς βοῦς καὶ ὄνους· ξύλοις δὲ ἐχρῶντο μικρὸν προϊόντες ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, οὗ ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, τοῖς τε οἰστοῖς πολλοῖς οὖσιν, οὓς ἠνάγκαζον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκβάλλειν τοὺς αὐτομολοῦντας παρὰ βασιλέως, καὶ τοῖς γέρροις καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι ταῖς ξυλίναις ταῖς Αἰγυπτίαις· πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ πέλται καὶ ἄμαξαι ἦσαν φέρεσθαι ἔρημοι· οἷς πᾶσι χρώμενοι κρέα ἔψοντες ἥσθιον ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν περὶ πλήθουσιν ἀγορὰν καὶ ἔρχονται παρὰ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους κήρυκες οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι βάρβαροι, ἦν δ' αὐτῶν Φαλῖνος εἷς Ἕλληνα, ὃς ἐτύγχανε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνει ὦν καὶ ἐντίμως ἔχων· καὶ γὰρ προσεποιεῖτο ἐπιστήμων εἶναι τῶν ἀμφὶ τάξεις τε καὶ ὀπλομαχίαν. οὗτοι δὲ προσελθόντες καὶ καλέσαντες

Χειρίσοφον τὸν Λάκωνα καὶ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν· καὶ  
 γὰρ αὐτὸς Μένων ἐβούλετο· ἦν γὰρ φίλος καὶ ξένος  
 Ἀριαίου. οἱ μὲν |come, go, Κλέαρχος δὲ |wait for

Τὸ δὲ |army |bring |grain, ὅπως ἐδύνατο, ἐκ  
 |about, |bread,  
 |provide |food  
 τῶν |beast of bur-|beat, cut, strike |s βοῦς καὶ |donkey |piece of wood  
 |den  
 δὲ ἐχρῶντο μικρὸν |to have been' πρὸ τῆς |rank of battle ὦ  
 |before, earlier  
 ἢ μάχη ἐγένετο, τοῖς τε οἰστοῖς πολλοῖς οὔσιν, οὓς  
 |force, οἱ |Greek |throw out, fell, let|desert  
 |compel |fall  
 παρὰ βασιλέως, καὶ τοῖς |wicker καὶ ταῖς |shield ταῖς  
 |object  
 |wooden ταῖς Αἰγυπτίαις· πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ πέλται καὶ |wagon  
 ἦσαν φέρεσθαι ἔρημοι· οἷς πᾶσι χρώμενοι |meat ἔψοντες  
 ἥσθιον ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν περὶ |be filled ἀγορὰν καὶ ἔρχονται  
 παρὰ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους |henchman, ἔ μὲν ἄλλοι  
 |functionary  
 |non-Greek , ἦν δ' αὐτῶν Φαλῖνος εἰς Ἑλλήν, ὃς ἐτύγχανε  
 παρὰ Τισσαφέρνει ὦν καὶ ἐντίμως ἔχων· καὶ γὰρ  
 |give over to; pre-|skillful, εἶναι τῶν ἀμφὶ τάξεις τε καὶ  
 |tend |clever  
 |fighting with οὔτοι δὲ |come forward, sur-᾽ καλέσαντες  
 |heavy arms |render, come in

Menon himself wished, being, as he was, a friend and intimate of Ariaeus, and bound by mutual ties of hospitality. So these set off, and Clearchus waited for them.

The soldiers furnished themselves with food (and drink) as best they might—falling back on the baggage animals, and cutting up oxen and asses. There was no lack of firewood; they need only step forward a few paces from the line where the battle was fought, and they would find arrows to hand in abundance, which the Hellenes had forced the deserters from the king to throw away. There were arrows and wicker shields also, and the huge wooden shields of the Egyptians. There were many targets also, and empty wagons left to be carried off. Here was a store which they were not slow to make use of to cook their meat and serve their meals that day.

It was now about full market hour when heralds from the king and Tissaphernes arrived. These were barbarians with one exception. This was a certain Phalinus, a Hellene who lived at the court of Tissaphernes, and was held in high esteem. He gave himself out to be a connoisseur of tactics and the art of fighting with heavy arms. These were the men who now came up, and having summoned

*vocabulary***αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**βαρύς** heavy ~baritone**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐξαίρῶ** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**πότερος** which, whichever of two**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

**ὑπηρετέω** serve**ὑπηρέτης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy**φίλιος** friendly

τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄρχοντας λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει τοὺς Ἑλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει καὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτονε, παραδόντας τὰ ὅπλα ἰόντας ἐπὶ βασιλέως θύρας εὐρίσκεσθαι ἂν τι δύνωνται ἀγαθόν. ταῦτα μὲν εἶπον οἱ βασιλέως κήρυκες· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες βαρέως μὲν ἤκουσαν, ὅμως δὲ Κλέαρχος τοσοῦτον εἶπεν, ὅτι οὐ τῶν νικῶντων εἴη τὰ ὅπλα παραδιδόναι· ἀλλ', ἔφη, ὑμεῖς μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὅ τι κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε· ἐγὼ δὲ αὐτίκα ἦξω. ἐκάλεσε γάρ τις αὐτὸν τῶν ὑπηρετῶν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ἱερὰ ἐξηρημένα· ἔτυχε γὰρ θυόμενος.

Ἐνθα δὴ ἀπεκρίνατο Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ἀρκάς, πρεσβύτατος ὢν, ὅτι πρόσθεν ἂν ἀποθάνοιεν ἢ τὰ ὅπλα παραδοίησαν· Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Θηβαῖος, «Ἄλλ' ἐγώ,» ἔφη, «ὦ Φαλῖνε, θαυμάζω πότερα ὥς κρατῶν βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ τὰ ὅπλα ἢ ὥς διὰ φιλίαν δῶρα. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὥς κρατῶν, τί δεῖ αὐτὸν αἰτεῖν καὶ οὐ λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα; εἰ δὲ πείσας βούλεται λαβεῖν, λεγέτω τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἐὰν αὐτῷ



τούς τῶν |Greek ἄρχοντας λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺς  
 κελεύει τούς |Greek , ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει καὶ Κῦρον  
 ἀπέκτονε, παραδόντας τὰ |tool ἰόντας ἐπὶ βασιλέως  
 θύρας εὐρίσκεσθαι ἂν τι δύνωνται ἀγαθόν. ταῦτα μὲν  
 εἶπον οἱ βασιλέως |henchman, |functionary ἰ δὲ |Greek |heavy μὲν  
 ἤκουσαν, |anyway, nevertheless τοσοῦτον εἶπεν, ὅτι οὐ τῶν  
 νικάντων εἴη τὰ |tool παραδιδόναι· ἀλλ', ἔφη, ὑμεῖς μὲν,  
 ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὅ τι κάλλιστόν  
 τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε· ἐγὼ δὲ αὐτίκα ἤξω. ἐκάλεσε γάρ τις  
 αὐτὸν τῶν ὑπηρετῶν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ἱερὰ |pick, steal; dedi- |have  
 |cate; destroy  
 γὰρ |rush; sacrifice

Ἐνθα δὴ ἀπεκρίνατο Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ἀρκάς, πρεσβύτατος  
 ὢν, ὅτι πρόσθεν ἂν ἀποθάνοιεν ἢ τὰ |tool παραδοίησαν·  
 Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Θηβαῖος, «Ἄλλ' ἐγώ,» ἔφη, «ὦ Φαλῖνε,  
 θαυμάζω |which, |as κρατῶν βασιλεὺς |ask for· ἂ |tool ἢ  
 |whichever  
 ὥς διὰ φιλίαν δῶρα. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὥς κρατῶν, τί δεῖ αὐτὸν  
 |ask for καὶ οὐ λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα; εἰ δὲ πείσας βούλεται λαβεῖν,  
 λεγέτω τί ἔσται τοῖς |soldier, |mercenary , ἐὰν αὐτῷ

the generals of the Hellenes, they delivered themselves of the following message: «The great king having won the victory and slain Cyrus, bids the Hellenes to surrender their arms; to betake themselves to the gates of the king's palace, and there obtain for themselves what terms they can.” That was what the heralds said, and the Hellenes listened with heavy hearts; but Clearchus spoke, and his words were few; «Conquerors do not, as a rule, give up their arms”; then turning to the others he added, «I leave it to you, my fellow-generals, to make the best and noblest answer, that ye may, to these gentlemen. I will rejoin you presently.” At the moment an official had summoned him to come and look at the entrails which had been taken out, for, as it chanced, he was engaged in sacrificing.

As soon as he was gone, Cleanor the Arcadian, by right of seniority, answered: «They would sooner die than give up their arms.” Then Proxenus the Theban said: «For my part, I marvel if the king demands our arms as our master, or for the sake of friendship merely, as presents. If as our master, why need he ask for them rather than come and take them? But if he would fain wheedle us out of them by fine speeches, he should tell us what the soldiers will receive in turn

*vocabulary***ἀδιάβατος** impassable**ἀνόητος** foolish**ἀντιποιέω** do in return; (mid) seek,  
claim**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἀχάριστος** ungracious, unpleasant

~eucharist

**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**ἐντός** within**νεανίσκος** (ἄ) young man**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**στερέω** steal, take**ὕμέτερος** (ὁ) yours**φιλόσοφος** wisdom-loving**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

ταῦτα χαρίσωνται.»

Πρὸς ταῦτα Φαλῖνος εἶπε· «Βασιλεὺς νικᾶν ἡγείται, ἐπεὶ  
Κῦρον ἀπέκτεινε. τίς γὰρ αὐτῷ ἔστιν ὅστις τῆς ἀρχῆς  
ἀντιποιεῖται; νομίζει δὲ καὶ ὑμᾶς ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι, ἔχων ἐν  
μέσῃ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρα καὶ ποταμῶν ἐντὸς ἀδιαβάτων καὶ  
πλῆθος ἀνθρώπων ἐφ' ὑμᾶς δυνάμενος ἀγαγεῖν, ὅσον οὐδ'  
εἰ παρέχοι ὑμῖν δύναισθε ἂν ἀποκτεῖναι.»

Μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν· «ὦ Φαλῖνε,  
νῦν, ὥς σὺ ὀρᾷς, ἡμῖν οὐδὲν ἔστιν ἀγαθὸν ἄλλο εἰ μὴ  
ὅπλα καὶ ἀρετή. ὅπλα μὲν οὖν ἔχοντες οἰόμεθα ἂν καὶ τῇ  
ἀρετῇ χρῆσθαι, παραδόντες δ' ἂν ταῦτα καὶ τῶν σωμάτων  
στερηθῆναι. μὴ οὖν οἷου τὰ μόνα ἀγαθὰ ἡμῖν ὄντα ὑμῖν  
παραδώσειν, ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις καὶ περὶ τῶν ὑμετέρων  
ἀγαθῶν μαχούμεθα.»

Ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Φαλῖνος ἐγέλασε καὶ εἶπεν· «Ἀλλὰ  
φιλοσόφῳ μὲν ἔοικας, ὦ νεανίσκε, καὶ λέγεις οὐκ  
ἀχάριστα· ἴσθι μέντοι ἀνόητος ὢν, εἰ οἶε τὴν ὑμετέραν

ταῦτα |gratify . . . »

Πρὸς ταῦτα Φαλῖνος εἶπε· «Βασιλεὺς νικᾶν ἡγείται, ἐπεὶ  
Κῦρον ἀπέκτεινε. τίς γὰρ αὐτῷ ἔστιν ὅστις τῆς ἀρχῆς  
|do in return; μίξει δὲ καὶ ὑμᾶς ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι, ἔχων ἐν  
|(mid) seek, claim  
μέσῃ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρα καὶ ποταμῶν |within |impassable καὶ  
πλῆθος ἀνθρώπων ἐφ' ὑμᾶς δυνάμενος ἀγαγεῖν, ὅσον οὐδ'  
εἰ παρέχοι ὑμῖν δύναισθε ἂν ἀποκτείνειν.»

Μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν· «ὦ Φαλῖνε,  
νῦν, ὥς σὺ ὀράς, ἡμῖν οὐδὲν ἔστιν ἀγαθὸν ἄλλο εἰ μὴ  
|tool καὶ |excel- |tool μὲν οὖν ἔχοντες οἰόμεθα ἂν καὶ τῇ  
|lence  
|excellence ἵσθαι, παραδόντες δ' ἂν ταῦτα καὶ τῶν σωμάτων  
|steal, take . μὴ οὖν οἷον τὰ μόνα ἀγαθὰ ἡμῖν ὄντα ὑμῖν  
παραδώσειν, ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις καὶ περὶ τῶν |yours  
ἀγαθῶν μαχούμεθα.»

Ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Φαλῖνος |laugh, καὶ εἶπεν· «Ἀλλὰ  
|smile  
|wisdom-loving μὲν ἔοικας, ὦ |young man καὶ λέγεις οὐκ  
|ungracious, ἵσθι μέντοι |foolish ὦν, εἰ οἶε τὴν |yours  
|unpleasant

for such kindness.”

In answer to him Phalinus said: «The king claims to have conquered, because he has put Cyrus to death; and who is there now to claim the kingdom as against himself? He further flatters himself that you also are in his power, since he holds you in the heart of his country, hemmed in by impassable rivers; and he can at any moment bring against you a multitude so vast that even if leave were given to rise and slay you could not kill them.”

After him Theopompus the Athenian spoke. «Phalinus,” he said, «at this instant, as you yourself can see, we have nothing left but our arms and our valour. If we keep the former we imagine we can make use of the latter; but if we deliver up our arms we shall presently be robbed of our lives. Do not suppose then that we are going to give up to you the only good things which we possess. We prefer to keep them; and by their help we will do battle with you for the good things which are yours.”

Phalinus laughed when he heard those words, and said: «Spoken like a philosopher, my fine young man, and very pretty reasoning too; yet, let me tell you, your wits are somewhat scattered if you imagine that your

*vocabulary*

**ἀναλέγω** gather up ~legion

**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence

**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or

**Ἕλληγν** Greek

**ἔρωτάω** ask about something

**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain

~genus

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy

**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,

campaign ~strategy

**συγκαταστρέφω** (mid) help to conquer

**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult ~volunteer

**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine

~epilepsy

**ὑπομαλακίζομαι** become more cowardly

ἀρετὴν περιγενέσθαι ἂν τῆς βασιλέως δυνάμεως.»

Ἄλλους δέ τινες ἔφασαν λέγειν ὑπομαλακίζομένους, ὥς καὶ Κύρω πιστοὶ ἐγένοντο καὶ βασιλεῖ ἂν πολλοῦ ἄξιοι γένοιτο, εἰ βούλοιτο φίλος γενέσθαι· καὶ εἴτε ἄλλο τι θέλοι χρῆσθαι εἴτ' ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον στρατεύειν, συγκαταστρέψαι τ' ἂν αὐτῷ.

Ἐν τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἦκε, καὶ ἠρώτησεν εἰ ἤδη ἀποκεκριμένοι εἶεν. Φαλῖνος δὲ ὑπολαβὼν εἶπεν· «Οὔτοι μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει· σὺ δ' ἡμῖν εἰπέ τί λέγεις.»

Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ σε, ὦ Φαλῖνε, ἄσμενος ἐόρακα, οἶμαι δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες· σύ τε γὰρ Ἑλλήν ἐῖ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι ὄντες ὅσους σὺ ὀρᾷς· ἐν τοιούτοις δὲ ὄντες πράγμασι συμβουλευόμεθά σοι τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις. σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον εἶναι, καὶ ὃ σοι τιμὴν οἴσει εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον ἀναλεγόμενον, ὅτι Φαλῖνός



excel- lence	surpass; sur- vive; attain	ἀν τῆς βασιλείας δυνάμεως.»
-----------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------------

Ἄλλους δέ τινας ἔφασαν λέγειν | become more cowardly

ὥς καὶ Κύρω | faithful; ἰσχυροὶ καὶ βασιλεῖ ἂν πολλοῦ  
| trustworthy

ἄξιοι γένοιτο, εἰ βούλοιτο φίλος γενέσθαι· καὶ	if, whenever; either/or
--	-------------------------

ἄλλο τι θέλοι χρῆσθαι	if, whenever; either/or	ὑπτον	make an expedition, war, campaign
-----------------------	----------------------------	-------	--------------------------------------

συγκαταστρέψαιντ' ἂν αὐτῷ.

Ἐν τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἤκε, καὶ ask εἰ ἥδη

ἀποκεκριμένοι εἶεν. Φαλῖνος δὲ | take under one's support, oi  
| seize; speak up; imagine

μέν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει· σὺ δ' ἡμῖν εἰπὲ τί  
λέγεις.»

Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ σε, ὦ Φαλῖνε, |be pleased, enjoy --, οἶμαι

δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες· σύ τε γὰρ Ἑλλην εἶ καὶ ἡμεῖς

τοσουῦτοι ὄντες ὅσους σὺ ὁρᾷς· ἐν τοιούτοις δὲ ὄντες

πράγμασι | give advice; (mid) σοι τί χρή ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν  
consult

λέγεις. σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν | give advice; ἡμῖν ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ  
(mid) consult

κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον εἶναι, καὶ ὅ σοι τιμὴν οἴσει εἰς τὸν

ἔπειτα χρόνον |gather up, ὅτι Φαλῖνός

valour will get the better of the king's power."

There were one or two others, it was said, who with a touch of weakness in their tone or argument, made answer: «They had proved good and trusty friends to Cyrus, and the king might find them no less valuable. If he liked to be friends with them, he might turn them to any use that pleased his fancy, say for a campaign against Egypt. Their arms were at his service; they would help to lay that country at his feet."

Just then Clearchus returned, and wished to know what answer they had given. The words were barely out of his mouth before Phalinus interrupting, answered: «As for your friends here, one says one thing and one another; will you please give us your opinion."

He replied: «The sight of you, Phalinus, caused me much pleasure; and not only me, but all of us, I feel sure; for you are a Hellene even as we are—every one of us whom you see before you. In our present plight we would like to take you into our counsel as to what we had better do touching your proposals. I beg you then solemnly, in the sight of heaven—do you tender us such advice as you shall deem best and worthiest, and such as shall bring you honour of after time, when it will be said of you how once on a time Phalinus

*vocabulary***ἄέκων** unwilling**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme**ἄμείνων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel**Ἑλλήν** Greek**εὐελπίς** -δος (m) hopeful**μυρίος** (ῑ) 10,000 ~myriad**ὅπη** wherever, however**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**πότε** when?**πρεσβεύω** be the elder, be an  
ambassador**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
~volunteer**σωτηρία** saving, preservation**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away  
from ~demagogue**ὑποστρέφω** turn around, go back  
~atrophy

ποτε πεμφθεὶς παρὰ βασιλέως κεύσων τοὺς Ἑλληνας τὰ ὄπλα παραδοῦναι συμβουλευομένοις συνεβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς τάδε. οἶσθα δὲ ὅτι ἀνάγκη λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἃ ἂν συμβουλεύσης.» ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ὑπήγετο βουλόμενος καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν παρὰ βασιλέως πρεσβεύοντα συμβουλευῆσαι μὴ παραδοῦναι τὰ ὄπλα, ὅπως εὐέλπιδες μᾶλλον εἶεν οἱ Ἕλληνες.

Φαλῖνος δὲ ὑποστρέψας παρὰ τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ εἶπεν· «Ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν τῶν μυρίων ἐλπίδων μία τις ὑμῖν ἐστι σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας βασιλεῖ, συμβουλεύω μὴ παραδιδόναι τὰ ὄπλα· εἰ δέ τοι μηδεμία σωτηρίας ἐστὶν ἐλπίς ἄκοντος βασιλέως, συμβουλεύω σώζεσθαι ὑμῖν ὅπη δυνατόν.»

Κλέαρχος δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· «Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ σὺ λέγεις· παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἀπάγγελλε τάδε, ὅτι ἡμεῖς οἰόμεθα, εἰ μὲν δέοι βασιλεῖ φίλους εἶναι, πλείονος ἂν ἄξιοι εἶναι φίλοι ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα ἢ παραδόντες ἄλλω, εἰ δὲ δέοι πολεμεῖν, ἄμεινον ἂν πολεμεῖν ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα ἢ ἄλλω

ποτε πεμφθεῖς παρὰ βασιλέως κεύουσιν τοὺς |Greek

τὰ |tool παραδοῦναι |give advice; (mid) |give advice;  
|consult (mid) consult

αὐτοῖς τάδε. οἶσθα δὲ ὅτι ἀνάγκη λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι

ἃ ἂν |give advice; » ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα |lead  
|(mid) consult

βουλόμενος καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν παρὰ βασιλέως |be the elder, be  
|an ambassador

|συμβουλεύω?: give advice; (mid) consult; |tool , ὅπως |hopeful  
or συμβουλεύω?: give advice; (mid) con-  
sult  
|μᾶλλον εἶεν οἱ |Greek

Φαλῖνος δὲ |go back παρὰ τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ εἶπεν·

«Ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν τῶν μυρίων ἐλπίδων μία τις ὑμῖν

ἐστι σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας βασιλεῖ, |give advice; μὴ  
|(mid) consult

παραδιδόναι τὰ |tool εἰ δέ τοι μηδεμία σωτηρίας ἐστὶν

ἐλπίς ἄκοντος βασιλέως, |give advice; σφύζεσθαι ὑμῖν |wherever,  
|(mid) consult |however

δυνατόν.»

Κλέαρχος δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· «Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ σὺ

λέγεις· παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ |announce, or- ἴδε, ὅτι ἡμεῖς οἰόμεθα, εἰ  
|der, promise

μὲν δέοι βασιλεῖ φίλους εἶναι, πλείονος ἂν ἄξιοι εἶναι φίλοι

ἔχοντες τὰ |tool ἢ παραδόντες ἄλλω, εἰ δὲ δέοι πολεμεῖν,

|better ἂν πολεμεῖν ἔχοντες τὰ |tool ἢ ἄλλω

was sent by the great king to bid certain Hellenes yield up their arms, and when they had taken him into their counsel, he gave them such and such advice. You know that whatever advice you do give us cannot fail to be reported in Hellas.”

Clearchus threw out these leading remarks in hopes that this man, who was the ambassador from the king, might himself be led to advise them not to give up their arms, in which case the Hellenes would be still more sanguine and hopeful. But, contrary to his expectation, Phalinus turned round and said: «I say that if you have one chance, one hope in ten thousand to wage a war with the king successfully, do not give up your arms. That is my advice. If, however, you have no chance of escape without the king’s consent, then I say save yourselves in the only way you can.”

And Clearchus answered: «So, then, that is your deliberate view? Well, this is our answer, take it back. We conceive that in either case, whether we are expected to be friends with the king, we shall be worth more as friends if we keep our arms than if we yield them to another; or whether we are to go to war, we shall fight better with them than without.”

And Phalinus said:

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

**διασημαίνω** point out, signal

**ἔρωτάω** ask about something

**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone

**πότερος** which, whichever of two

**πρόεμι** to have been before, earlier

~ion

**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous

**τοῖνυν** well, then

παραδόντες.»

Ὁ δὲ Φαλῖνος εἶπε· «Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἀπαγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ τάδε ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε βασιλεύς, ὅτι μένουσι μὲν ὑμῖν αὐτοῦ σπονδαὶ εἴησαν, προῖοῦσι δὲ καὶ ἀπιούσι πόλεμος. εἵπατε οὖν καὶ περὶ τούτου πότερα μενεῖτε καὶ σπονδαί εἰσιν ἢ ὡς πολέμου ὄντος παρ' ὑμῶν ἀπαγγελῶ.»

Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεξεν· «Ἀπάγγελλε τοῖνυν καὶ περὶ τούτου ὅτι καὶ ἡμῖν ταῦτὰ δοκεῖ ἅπερ καὶ βασιλεῖ.» «Τί οὖν ταῦτά ἐστιν;» ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. ἀπεκρίνατο Κλέαρχος· «Ἦν μὲν μένωμεν, σπονδαί, ἀπιούσι δὲ καὶ προῖοῦσι πόλεμος.» ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἠρώτησε· «Σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπαγγελῶ;» Κλέαρχος δὲ ταῦτὰ πάλιν ἀπεκρίνατο· «Σπονδαὶ μὲν μένουσιν, ἀπιούσι δὲ καὶ προῖοῦσι πόλεμος.» ὅ τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐ διεσήμνηε.

## 2.2

Φαλῖνος μὲν δὴ ὥχετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ παρὰ Ἀρριαίου ἦγον Προκλῆς καὶ Χειρίσοφος· Μένων δὲ αὐτοῦ ἔμενε



παραδόντες.»

Ὁ δὲ Φαλῖνος εἶπε· «Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ |announce, order, ἀλλὰ  
|promise

καὶ τάδε ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε βασιλεύς, ὅτι μένουσι μὲν

ὑμῖν αὐτοῦ |libation, εἴσαν, |to have been καὶ ἀπιούσι  
|treaty |before, earlier

πόλεμος. εἶπατε οὖν καὶ περὶ τούτου |which, , ἐνεῖτε καὶ  
|whichever

|libation, εἶσιν ἢ ὡς πολέμου ὄντος παρ' ὑμῶν |announce, or-  
|treaty |der, promise

Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεξεν· «|announce, or-|well, then ἰ περὶ τούτου  
|der, promise

ὅτι καὶ ἡμῖν ταῦτά δοκεῖ ἅπερ καὶ βασιλεῖ.» «Τί

οὖν ταῦτά ἐστιν;» ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. ἀπεκρίνατο

Κλέαρχος· «Ἦν μὲν μένωμεν, |libation, , ἀπιούσι δὲ καὶ  
|treaty

|to have been ἔλεμος.» ὁ δὲ πάλιν |ask «|libation,  
|before, earlier |treaty

ἢ πόλεμον |announce, or- Κλέαρχος δὲ ταῦτά πάλιν  
|der, promise

ἀπεκρίνατο· «|libation, μὲν μένουσιν, ἀπιούσι δὲ καὶ  
|treaty

|to have been ἔλεμος.» ὅ τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐ |point out, signal  
|before, earlier

## 2.2

Φαλῖνος μὲν δὴ |come, go ἰ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ παρὰ Ἀριαίου

ἦγον Προκλῆς καὶ Χειρίσοφος· Μένων δὲ αὐτοῦ ἔμενε

«That answer we will repeat; but the king bade me tell you this besides, ‘Whilst you remain here there is truce; but one step forward or one step back, the truce ends; there is war.’ Will you then please inform us as to that point also? Are you minded to stop and keep truce, or is there to be war? What answer shall I take from you?” And Clearchus replied: «Pray answer that we hold precisely the same views on this point as the king.”—« How say you the same views?” asked Phalinus. Clearchus made answer: «As long as we stay here there is truce, but a step forward or a step backward, the truce ends; there is war.” The other again asked: «Peace or war, what answer shall I make?” Clearchus returned answer once again in the same words: «Truce if we stop, but if we move forwards or backwards war.” But what he was minded really to do, that he refused to make further manifest.

## 2.2

Phalinus and those that were with him turned and went. But the messengers from Ariaeus, Procles and Cheirisophus came back. As to Menon, he stayed behind with Ariaeus. They brought

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**αὔριον** tomorrow  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**ἔοικότως** like; fairly  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**θύω** (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**ναυσίπορος** navigable  
**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;  
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear  
**συνάπειμι** leave together  
**τοιόσδε** such

παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ· οὗτοι δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι πολλοὺς φαίη Ἀριαῖος εἶναι Πέρσας ἑαυτοῦ βελτίους, οὓς οὐκ ἂν ἀνασχέσθαι αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος· ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε συναπιέναι, ἥκειν ἤδη κελεύει τῆς νυκτός. εἰ δὲ μή, αὔριον πρῶ ἀπιέναι φησίν.

«Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' οὕτω χρή ποιεῖν· ἐὰν μὲν ἤκωμεν, ὥσπερ λέγετε· εἰ δὲ μή, πράττετε ὅποιον ἂν τι ὑμῖν οἴησθε μάλιστα συμφέρειν.» ὃ τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐδὲ τούτοις εἶπε.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἤδη ἡλίου δύνοντος συγκαλέσας στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς ἔλεξε τοιάδε. «Ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, θυομένῳ ἵεναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά. καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο· ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ νῦν πυνθάνομαι, ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ βασιλέως ὁ Τίγρης ποταμός ἐστι ναυσίπορος, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα ἄνευ πλοίων διαβῆναι· πλοῖα δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἔχομεν. οὐ μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ γε μένειν οἶόν τε· τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκ ἔστιν ἔχειν· ἵεναι δὲ παρὰ τοὺς Κύρου φίλους πάνυ καλὰ ἡμῖν τὰ ἱερά ἦν. ὥδε οὖν χρή

παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ· οὗτοι δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι πολλοὺς φαίη Ἀριαῖος  
εἶναι Πέρσας ἑαυτοῦ βελτίους, οὓς οὐκ ἂν |raise; endure  
αὐτοῦ |be king ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε |leave together, ἥκειν  
ἤδη κελεύει τῆς νυκτός. εἰ δὲ μή, |tomorrow, ὥ ἀπιέναι  
φησὶν.

«Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' οὕτω χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἐὰν μὲν  
ἤκωμεν, ὥσπερ λέγετε· εἰ δὲ μή, πράττετε |whatever kind.  
ὑμῖν οἷσθε μάλιστα |bring together; b' exp'edi- |τοιήσοι οὐδὲ  
|ent; agree; (mp) happen  
τούτοις εἶπε.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἤδη ἡλίου δύνοντος |call together στρατηγούς  
καὶ |captain ἔλεξε |such . «Ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, |rush; sacrifice  
ιέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά. καὶ |like;  
|fairly  
ἄρα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο· ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ νῦν πυνθάνομαι, ἐν μέσῳ  
ἡμῶν καὶ βασιλέως ὁ Τίγρης ποταμός ἐστι |navigable ,  
ὃν οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα |away from; not |pass over, cross. ἵα δὲ  
|having; not  
|needing  
ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἔχομεν. οὐ μὲν οἶα αὐτοῦ γε μένειν οἶόν τε· τὰ  
γὰρ |fit, suitable οὐκ ἔστιν ἔχειν· ιέναι δὲ παρὰ τοὺς Κύρου  
φίλους πάνυ καλὰ ἡμῖν τὰ ἱερά ἦν. ὧδε οὖν χρὴ

back this answer from Ariaeus: «' There are many Persians,' he says, 'better than himself who will not suffer him to sit upon the king's throne; but if you are minded to go back with him, you must join him this very night, otherwise he will set off himself to-morrow on the homeward route.'” And Clearchus said: «It had best stand thus between us then. If we come, well and good, be it as you propose; but if we do not come, do whatsoever you think most conducive to your interests.” And so he kept these also in the dark as to his real intention.

After this, when the sun was already sinking, he summoned the generals and officers, and made the following statement: «Sirs, I sacrificed and found the victims unfavourable to an advance against the king. After all, it is not so surprising perhaps, for, as I now learn, between us and the king flows the river Tigris, navigable for big vessels, and we could not possibly cross it without boats, and boats we have none. On the other hand, to stop here is out of the question, for there is no possibility of getting provisions. However, the victims were quite agreeable to us joining the friends of Cyrus. This is what we must do

*vocabulary*

**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**ἀνατίθημι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
 (mp) reproach  
**ἄπειρος** untested; infinite  
**ἀριθμός** number  
**αὐτομολέω** desert  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**ἐνενήκοντα** ninety  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἑξακισχίλιοι** 6000  
**ἑξήκοντα** sixty  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**μυρίος** (ο) 10,000 ~myriad

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
 ca. 5 km  
**πεντακόσιοι** 500  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σκότος** darkness, shadow ~shadow  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**τεσσαράκοντα** forty ~trapezoid  
**τετταράκοντα** forty  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred ~three  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote

ποιεῖν· ἀπιόντας δειπνεῖν ὅ τι τις ἔχει· ἐπειδὰν δὲ σημήνη τῷ κέρατι ὥς ἀναπαύεσθαι, συσκευάζεσθε· ἐπειδὰν δὲ τὸ δεύτερον, ἀνατίθεσθε ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ, τὰ μὲν ὑποζύγια ἔχοντες πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τὰ δὲ ὄπλα ἔξω.»

Ταῦτ' ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπῆλθον καὶ ἐποιοῦν οὕτω. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁ μὲν ἦρχεν, οἱ δὲ ἐπείθοντο, οὐχ ἐλόμενοι, ἀλλὰ ὁρῶντες ὅτι μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα δεῖ τὸν ἄρχοντα, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἄπειροι ἦσαν.

Ἀριθμὸς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν ἦλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας μέχρι τῆς μάχης σταθμοὶ τρεῖς καὶ ἐνενήκοντα, παρασάγγαι πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ πεντακόσιοι, στάδιοι πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑξακισχίλιοι καὶ μύριοι· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης ἐλέγοντο εἶναι εἰς Βαβυλῶνα στάδιοι ἐξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιοι.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ σκότος ἐγένετο Μιλτοκύθης μὲν ὁ Θρᾷξ ἔχων τούς τε ἰππέας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς τετταράκοντα καὶ τῶν πεζῶν Θρακῶν ὥς τριακοσίους ἠῦτομόλησε πρὸς



ποιεῖν· ἀπιόντας |eat, dine ὅ τι τις ἔχει· |when, δὲ |give orders to; show;  
 |after |mark  
 τῷ |horn; ὥς |cause to cease , |pack up |when, δὲ τὸ  
 |military |after  
 δευτέρων, |unit |consecrate, lay' on, im-|beast of burden` δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ  
 |pute; (mp) reproach  
 ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ, τὰ μὲν |beast of burden` ες πρὸς τοῦ  
 ποταμοῦ, τὰ δὲ |tool ἔξω.»

Ταῦτ' ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ |captain ἀπήλθον καὶ  
 ἐποιοῦν οὕτω. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁ μὲν ἤρχεν, οἱ δὲ ἐπείθοντο,  
 οὐχ ἐλόμενοι, ἀλλὰ ὁρῶντες ὅτι μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα δεῖ τὸν  
 ἄρχοντα, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι |untested; ἦσαν.  
 |infinite

|number τῆς ὁδοῦ ἣν ἦλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας |as far as, until  
 τῆς μάχης |cottage; post, εἰς καὶ |ninety , |ca. 5 km  
 πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ |500 , στάδιοι |fifty  
 καὶ |6000 καὶ μύριοι· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης ἐλέγοντο  
 εἶναι εἰς Βαβυλῶνα στάδιοι |sixty καὶ |three  
 |hundred  
 |thence ἐπεὶ |darkness ἐγένετο Μιλτοκύθης μὲν ὁ Θραῆς  
 ἔχων τοὺς τε ἱππείας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς τετταράκοντα  
 καὶ τῶν πεζῶν Θρακῶν ὥς |three hundred |desert πρὸς

then. Let each go away and sup on whatever he has. At the first sound of the bugle to turn in, get kit and baggage together; at the second signal, place them on the baggage animals; and at the third, fall in and follow the lead, with the baggage animals on the inside protected by the river, and the troops outside.”

After hearing the orders, the generals and officers retired, and did as they were bid; and for the future Clearchus led, and the rest followed in obedience to his orders, not that they had expressly chosen him, but they saw that he alone had the sense and wisdom requisite in a general, while the rest were inexperienced.

They had come in 93 stages from Ephesus to where the battle happened, covering 535 parasangs, or 16,050 stadia. The additional distance to Bablyon is said to be 360 stadia.

Here, under cover of the darkness which descended, the Thracian Miltocythes, with forty horsemen and three hundred Thracian infantry, deserted to the king; but the rest of the troops—Clearchus leading

*vocabulary*

ἄδολος honest, genuine  
 ἄσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 βάπτω submerge ~baptize  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἐννοέω consider  
 κάπρος boar  
 κράτιστος best  
 κρείσσω more powerful; better  
 κριός (i) ram  
 λιμός (i, f) famine  
 λόγχη spear point; lot  
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain  
 ξίφος -εος (n, 3) sword  
 ὅμνυμι (ō) swear  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite  
 παντελής complete, absolute  
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
 πιστός faithful; trustworthy  
 πορεία gait, march  
 πότερος which, whichever of two  
 προδίδωμι betray  
 προσόμνυμι (ō) swear as well  
 προσομνύω swear as well  
 σταθμός cottage; post  
 στόλος expedition, equipment, forces  
 ~apostle  
 στρατιά army ~strategy  
 συνέρχομαι come together  
 σφάζω cut the throat  
 ταῦρος bull ~steer

βασιλέα. Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἡγείτο κατὰ τὰ  
 παρηγγελμένα, οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν  
 πρῶτον σταθμὸν παρ' Ἀριαῖον καὶ τὴν ἐκείνου στρατιὰν  
 ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας· καὶ ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα συνήλθον  
 οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρ' Ἀριαῖον·  
 καὶ ὥμοσαν οἳ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος καὶ τῶν σὺν  
 αὐτῷ οἱ κράτιστοι μήτε προδώσειν ἀλλήλους σύμμαχοί  
 τε ἔσεσθαι· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσώμοσαν καὶ ἡγήσασθαι  
 ἀδόλως. ταῦτα δ' ὥμοσαν, σφάξαντες ταῦρον καὶ κάπρον  
 καὶ κριὸν εἰς ἀσπίδα, οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες βάπτοντες ξίφος, οἱ  
 δὲ βάρβαροι λόγχην.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ ἐγένετο, εἶπεν ὁ Κλέαρχος· « Ἄγε δῆ,  
 ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπείπερ ὁ αὐτὸς ὑμῖν στόλος ἐστὶ καὶ ἡμῖν,  
 εἰπὲ τίνα γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας, πότερον ἄπιμεν  
 ἢνπερ ἦλθομεν ἢ ἄλλην τινὰ ἐννενοηκέναι δοκεῖς ὁδὸν  
 κρείττω. »

Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· « Ἦν μὲν ἦλθομεν ἀπιόντες παντελῶς ἂν ὑπὸ  
 λιμοῦ ἀπολοίμεθα· ὑπάρχει γὰρ νῦν ἡμῖν οὐδὲν τῶν

βασιλέα. Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἡγεῖτο κατὰ τὰ

|transmit; order, sumῆν, ἵποντο· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν  
|recommend, encourage

πρῶτον |cottage; post -ρ' Ἀριαῖον καὶ τὴν ἐκείνου |army

ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας· καὶ ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ |tool |come together

οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ |captain τῶν |Greek παρ' Ἀριαῖον·

καὶ ὥμοσαν οἳ τε |Greek καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος καὶ τῶν σὺν

αὐτῷ οἱ |best μῆτε |betray ἀλλήλους σύμμαχοί

τε ἔσσεσθαι· οἱ δὲ |non-Greek προσώμοσαν καὶ ἡγήσεσθαι

|honest, ταῦτα δ' ὥμοσαν, |cut the throat|bull καὶ |boar  
|genuine

καὶ |ram εἰς |shield , οἱ μὲν |Greek |submerge |sword, οἱ

δὲ |non-Greek |spear  
|point;  
|lot

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ |faithful; , ἔτο, εἶπεν ὁ Κλέαρχος· « Ἄγε δὴ,  
|trustworthy

ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπείπερ ὁ αὐτὸς ὑμῖν |expedition, equip-· ἡμῖν,  
|ment, forces

εἰπὲ τίνα γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς |gait, , |which, ἵπιμεν  
|march |whichever

ἥνπερ ἤλθομεν ἢ ἄλλην τινὰ |consider δοκεῖς ὁδὸν

κρίπτω.»

Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· « Ἦν μὲν ἤλθομεν ἀπιόντες |complete, ἂν ὑπὸ  
|absolute

|famine ἱπολοίμεθα· ὑπάρχει γὰρ νῦν ἡμῖν οὐδὲν τῶν

and the rest following in accordance with the orders promulgated—took their departure, and about midnight reached their first stage, having come up with Ariaeus and his army. They grounded arms just as they stood in rank, and the generals and officers of the Hellenes met in the tent of Ariaeus. There they exchanged oaths—the Hellenes on the one side and Ariaeus with his principal officers on the other—not to betray one another, but to be true to each other as allies. The Asiatics further solemnly pledged themselves by oath to lead the way without treachery. The oaths were ratified by the sacrifice of a bull, a wolf, a boar, and a ram over a shield. The Hellenes dipped a sword, the barbarians a lance, into the blood of the victims.

As soon as the pledge was taken, Clearchus spoke: «And now, Ariaeus,” he said, «since you and we have one expedition in prospect, will you tell us what you think about the route; shall we return the way we came, or have you devised a better?”

He answered: «To return the same way is to perish to a man by hunger; for at this moment we have no provisions whatsoever. During

*vocabulary*

**ἄπαξ** once

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape

**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed

**ἀποσπάω** tear/drag away

**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free

**βασιλικός** royal

**δεῦρο** here, come here!

**διαπορεύω** carry over, through

**ἐγγύς** near

**ἐπινοέω** intend

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**ἐπτακαίδεκα** 17

**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel

**καταδαπανάω** squander, consume

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy

**κώμη** village

**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider

**σπανίζω** be scarce; lack; use up

**σταθμάομαι** judge, conclude

**στάθμη** carpenter's line ~station

**σταθμός** cottage; post

**στόλος** expedition, equipment, forces

~apostle

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**στρατηγέω** be a general

**στρατηγία** office of command, strategy

~strategy

**τύχη** fortune, act of a god

**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie

~pseudo-

ἐπιτηδείων. ἑπτακαίδεκα γὰρ σταθμῶν τῶν ἐγγυτάτω οὐδὲ δεῦρο ἰόντες ἐκ τῆς χώρας οὐδὲν εἶχομεν λαμβάνειν· ἔνθα δέ τι ἦν, ἡμεῖς διαπορευόμενοι κατεδαπανήσαμεν. νῦν δ' ἐπινοοῦμεν πορεύεσθαι μακροτέραν μὲν, τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ ἀπορήσομεν. πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα μακροτάτους, ἵνα ὥς πλείστον ἀποσπάσωμεν τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος· ἦν γὰρ ἅπαξ δύο ἢ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπόσχωμεν, οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς καταλαβεῖν. ὀλίγω μὲν γὰρ στρατεύματι οὐ τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι· πολλὸν δ' ἔχων στόλον οὐ δυνήσεται ταχέως πορεύεσθαι· ἴσως δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων σπανιεῖ. ταύτην,» ἔφη, «τὴν γνώμην ἔχω ἔγωγε.»

Ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἡ στρατηγία οὐδὲν ἄλλο δυναμένη ἢ ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν· ἡ δὲ τύχη ἐστρατήγησε κάλλιον. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ἐπορεύοντο ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν ἥλιον, λογιζόμενοι ἥξειν ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι εἰς κώμας τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας· καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐψεύσθησαν. ἔτι



|fit, suitable . . . |17

γὰρ σταθμῶν τῶν |near

οὐδὲ |here, come here! . . . τῆς χώρας οὐδὲν εἶχομεν λαμβάνειν·

ἐνθα δέ τι ἦν, ἡμεῖς διαπορευόμενοι |squander, consume . . .

νῦν δ' |intend πορεύεσθαι μακροτέραν μὲν, τῶν δ'

|fit, suitable οὐκ |be confused, πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς  
|distressed

πρώτους |cottage; post ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα μακροτάτους, ἵνα

ὥς πλείστον |tear/drag away τοῦ |royal |army

ἦν γὰρ |once δύο ἢ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν |ward off, drive off, refrain,  
|be at some distance

οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς |seize, understand, catch, |ν  
|overtake; (mp) happen

γὰρ |army οὐ τολμήσει |drive, meet, follow . . . δ' ἔχων

|expedition, equip- εἶται ταχέως πορεύεσθαι· ἴσως δὲ καὶ τῶν  
|ment, forces

|fit, suitable |be scarce; αὐτήν,» ἔφη, «τὴν γνώμην ἔχω  
|lack; use up

ἔγωγε.»

Ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἡ στρατηγία οὐδὲν ἄλλο δυναμένη ἢ

|escape ἢ |avoid, escape, |δὲ |for- |be a general κάλλιον.  
|go free |tune,

ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ἐπορεύοντο ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν  
|act of  
|a god

ἥλιον, |reckon, ἥξειν ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι εἰς |village τῆς  
|consider

Βαβυλωνίας χώρας· καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ |be false, deceive; |ι  
| (mid) to lie

the seventeen last stages, even on our way hither, we could extract nothing from the country; or, if there was now and again anything, we passed over and utterly consumed it. At this time our project is to take another and a longer journey certainly, but we shall not be in straits for provisions. The earliest stages must be very long, as long as we can make them; the object is to put as large a space as possible between us and the royal army; once we are two or three days' journey off, the danger is over. The king will never overtake us. With a small army he will not dare to dog our heels, and with a vast equipment he will lack the power to march quickly. Perhaps he, too, may even find a scarcity of provisions. There," said he, «you asked for my opinion, see, I have given it."

Here was a plan of the campaign, which was equivalent to a stampede: helter-skelter they were to run away, or get into hiding somehow; but fortune proved a better general. For as soon as it was day they recommenced the journey, keeping the sun on their right, and calculating that with the westering rays they would have reached villages in the territory of Babylonia, and in this hope they were not deceived.

*vocabulary*

**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀποκλίνω** (ι) bend aside ~incline  
**ἄσιτος** (ι) not eating ~parasite  
**αὐλίζομαι** live, lodge at  
**βασιλικός** royal  
**δείλη** afternoon ~diem  
**διαρπάζω** make prey of ~harpoon  
**διότι** because; that  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**εὐθύωρος** straight  
**θέω** run, run for  
**θωρακίζω** (ᾱ) to arm, armor  
**καπνός** smoke  
**κατασκηνόω** set up camp  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**κώμη** village  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless

**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**ὀψέ** late, in evening ~epitaph  
**προπέμπω** send, send ahead ~pomp  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far  
**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,  
 target ~telescope  
**σκοταῖος** dark, dark time of day  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
 station ~strategy  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma  
**ὕποζυγιον** beast of burden ~zygote

δὲ ἀμφὶ δειλὴν ἔδοξαν πολεμίους ὁρᾶν ἱππέας· καὶ τῶν τε Ἑλλήνων οἳ μὴ ἔτυχον ἐν ταῖς τάξεσιν ὄντες εἰς τὰς τάξεις ἔθειον, καὶ Ἀριαῖος ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἐφ' ἀμάξης πορευόμενος διότι ἐτέτρωτο καταβὰς ἐθωρακίζετο καὶ οἳ σὺν αὐτῷ. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὠπλίζοντο ἤκον λέγοντες οἳ προπεμφθέντες σκοποὶ ὅτι οὐχ ἱππεῖς εἰσιν, ἀλλ' ὑποζύγια νέμονται. καὶ εὐθὺς ἔγνωσαν πάντες ὅτι ἐγγὺς που ἐστρατοπεδεύετο βασιλεύς· καὶ γὰρ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμαις οὐ πρόσω. Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ ἦγεν· ἥδει γὰρ καὶ ἀπειρηκότας τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἀσίτους ὄντας· ἥδη δὲ καὶ ὁψὲ ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀπέκλινε, φυλαττόμενος μὴ δοκοίη φεύγειν, ἀλλ' εὐθύωρον ἄγων ἅμα τῷ ἡλίῳ δυομένῳ εἰς τὰς ἐγγυτάτῳ κώμας τοὺς πρώτους ἄγων κατεσκήνωσεν.

Ἐξ ὧν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ξύλα. οἳ μὲν οὖν πρῶτοι ὅμως τρόπῳ τινὶ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, οἳ δὲ ὕστεροι σκοταῖοι προσιόντες ὡς ἐτύγχανον ἕκαστοι ἠυλίζοντο, καὶ κραυγὴν

δὲ ἀμφὶ |afternoon ᾗ ζῶσαν πολεμίους ὁρᾶν ἱππέας· καὶ τῶν τε  
 |Greek οἱ μὴ ἔτυχον ἐν ταῖς τάξεσιν ὄντες εἰς τὰς τάξεις  
 |run , καὶ Ἀριαῖος ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἐφ' |wagon πορευόμενος  
 |be- |wound, bring ιταβὰς |to arm, armor καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ.  
 |cause; |to grief  
 |that ἐν ᾧ δὲ |prepare, arm ἦκον λέγοντες οἱ |send, send ahead  
 |lookout ὅτι οὐχ ἱππεῖς εἰσιν, ἀλλ' |beast of|burden distribute . καὶ  
 εὐθὺς ἔγνωσαν πάντες ὅτι ἐγγύς που |encamp or take up  
 |station  
 βασιλεύς· καὶ γὰρ |smoke ἐφαίνετο ἐν |village οὐ |forward, in the fu-  
 |ture; far  
 Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ ἦγεν· ἥδει γὰρ  
 καὶ ἀπειρηκότας τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ |not eating ᾗ ντας· ἥδη  
 δὲ καὶ |late ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ |bend aside, φυλαττόμενος  
 μὴ δοκοίη φεύγειν, ἀλλ' |straight ἄγων ἅμα τῷ ἡλίῳ  
 δυομένῳ εἰς τὰς ἐγγυτάτῳ |village τοὺς πρώτους ἄγων  
 |set up camp .  
 Ἐξ ὧν |make prey of ἐπὶ τοῦ |royal |army καὶ  
 αὐτὰ τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ξύλα. οἱ μὲν οὖν πρῶτοι ὁμῶς  
 τρόπῳ τινὶ |encamp or take up sta- , οἱ δὲ ὕστεροι |dark, dark  
 |tion |time of day  
 προσιόντες ὡς ἐτύγχανον ἕκαστοι |live, lodge, καὶ |screaming,  
 |at |shouting

While it was yet afternoon, they thought they caught sight of some of the enemy's cavalry; and those of the Hellenes who were not in rank ran to their ranks; and Ariaeus, who was riding in a wagon to nurse a wound, got down and donned his cuirass, the rest of his party following his example. Whilst they were arming themselves, the scouts, who had been sent forward, came back with the information that they were not cavalry but baggage animals grazing. It was at once clear to all that they must be somewhere in the neighbourhood of the king's encampment. Smoke could actually be seen rising, evidently from villages not far ahead. Clearchus hesitated to advance upon the enemy, knowing that the troops were tired and hungry; and indeed it was already late. On the other hand he had no mind either to swerve from his route—guarding against any appearance of flight. Accordingly he marched straight as an arrow, and with sunset entered the nearest villages with his vanguard and took up quarters.

These villages had been thoroughly sacked and dismantled by the royal army—down to the very woodwork and furniture of the houses. Still, the vanguard contrived to take up their quarters in some sort of fashion; but the rear division, coming up in the dark, had to bivouac as best they could, one detachment after another; and a great noise they

*vocabulary*

**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**δοῦπος** roar  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**εἰκός** likely  
**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out  
 ~ppectrum  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal  
**ἐφοδος** accessible; inspector; entrance; attack  
**θόρυβος** noise, clamor  
**καπνός** smoke  
**κενός** empty, vain  
**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon people  
**μηνύω** disclose, betray, accuse  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available  
**ὄνομαι** blame ~name  
**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὄρθρος** dawn  
**οὐδαμοῦ** nowhere  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order  
**πρόεimi** to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
**σιγά** silence  
**σκήνωμα** -τος (n, 3) tent; stage  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**σῶς** safe, alive  
**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight  
 ~talent  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote  
**ὕστεραίος** the next; later

πολλήν ἐποίουν καλοῦντες ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀκούειν· ὥστε οἱ μὲν ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων καὶ ἔφυγον ἐκ τῶν σκηνωμάτων. δῆλον δὲ τοῦτο τῇ ὑστεραία ἐγένετο· οὔτε γὰρ ὑποζύγιον ἔτ' οὐδὲν ἐφάνη οὔτε στρατόπεδον οὔτε καπνὸς οὐδαμοῦ πλησίον. ἐξεπλάγη δέ, ὡς ἔοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς τῇ ἐφόδῳ τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἐδήλωσε δὲ τοῦτο οἷς τῇ ὑστεραία ἔπραττε.

Προϊούσης μέντοι τῆς νυκτὸς ταύτης καὶ τοῖς Ἑλλησι φόβος ἐμπίπτει, καὶ θόρυβος καὶ δοῦπος ἦν οἶον εἰκὸς φόβου ἐμπεσόντος γενέσθαι. Κλέαρχος δὲ Τολμίδην Ἥλειον, ὃν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων παρ' ἐαυτῷ κήρυκα ἄριστον τῶν τότε, ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε σιγὴν κηρύξαντα ὅτι προαγορεύουσιν οἱ ἄρχοντες, ὃς ἂν τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν ὄνον εἰς τὰ ὄπλα μηνύσῃ, ὅτι λήψεται μισθὸν τάλαντον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐκηρύχθη, ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατιῶται ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἴη καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες σῶοι. ἅμα δὲ ὀρθρῶ παρήγγειλεν ὁ Κλέαρχος εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὄπλα τίθεσθαι τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἥπερ εἶχον ὅτε ἦν ἡ μάχη.



πολλήν ἐποίουν καλοῦντες ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς

πολεμίους ἀκούειν· ὥστε οἱ μὲν ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων

καὶ ἔφυγον ἐκ τῶν	tent; stage	·	visible, οὐτο τῇ
			conspicuous

|the next; later' *ἔτι οὐτε γὰρ* |beast of burden' *οὐδὲν ἐφάνη οὐτε*

στρατόπεδον οὔτε |smoke |nowhere |near |panic, be  
knocked out

δέ, ὥς ἔοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς τῇ | accessible; in- | army  
spector; en-  
trance; attack  
show, δὲ τοῦτο οἷς τῇ | the next; later | -αὐτῇ.

to have been before, earlier

φόβος ἐμπίπτει, καὶ |noise,      καὶ |roar      ἦν οἶον |likely  
|clamor

φόβου |fall into; attack, ἐνέσθαι. Κλέαρχος δὲ Τολμίδην

Ἡλείον, ὃν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων παρ' ἑαυτῷ κήρυκα ἄριστον

τῶν τότε, ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε σιγὴν	be a henchman, i  summon people
-----------------------------------	------------------------------------

declare, predict, or- der	οἱ ἄρχοντες, ὃς ἂν τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν ὄνον
------------------------------	--

εἰς τὰ ὄπλα	disclose, be- tray, accuse	λῆψεται	reward, wages	scale, a unit of weight	ἐπεὶ
-------------	-------------------------------	---------	------------------	----------------------------	------

δὲ ταῦτα |be a henchmān, *ὡσαν οἱ στρατιῶται ὅτι* |empty, vain  
|summon people

ὁ φόβος εἶη καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες σωτοὶ. ἅμα δὲ dawn

transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage

|Greek ἡπερ εἶχον ὅτε ἦν ἡ μάχη.

made, with hue and cry to one another, so that the enemy could hear them; and those in their immediate proximity actually took to their heels, left their quarters, and decamped, as was plain enough next morning, when not a beast was to be seen, nor sign of camp or wreath of smoke anywhere in the neighbourhood. The king, as it would appear, was himself quite taken aback by the advent of the army; as he fully showed by his proceedings next day.

During the progress of this night the Hellenes had their turn of scare—a panic seized them, and there was a noise and clatter, hardly to be explained except by the visitation of some sudden terror. But Clearchus had with him the Eleian Tolmides, the best herald of his time; him he ordered to proclaim silence, and then to give out this proclamation of the generals: «Whoever will give any information as to who let an ass into the camp shall receive a talent of silver in reward.” On hearing this proclamation the soldiers made up their minds that their fear was baseless, and their generals safe and sound. At break of day Clearchus gave the order to the Hellenes to get under arms in line of battle, and take up exactly the same position as they held on the day of the battle.

*vocabulary*

**ἀνατέλλω** cause to grow ~apostle  
**ἀνερωτάω** question  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
**ἄχρι** as far as (+gen); until  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out  
 ~plectrum  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἐπισκοπέω** look upon, inspect  
**ἐπισκοπή** oversight, officer  
**εὐειδής** good-looking ~wit  
**ἐφοδος** accessible; inspector; entrance;  
 attack  
**καταφανής** clearly seen

**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**πάντη** everywhere  
**περιμένω** wait for  
**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out  
**προφύλαξ** vanguard, guard officer  
**πυκνός** dense, frequent; shrewd  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**σχολάζω** have leisure  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx

## 2.3

Ὁ δὲ δὴ ἔγραψα ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ ἐφόδῳ, τῷδε δῆλον ἦν. τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων τὰ ὄπλα παραδιδόναι ἐκέλευε, τότε δὲ ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνατέλλοντι κήρυκας ἔπεμψε περὶ σπονδῶν. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ ἦλθον πρὸς τοὺς προφύλακας, ἐζήτουν τοὺς ἄρχοντας. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον οἱ προφύλακες, Κλέαρχος τυχὼν τότε τὰς τάξεις ἐπισκοπῶν εἶπε τοῖς προφύλαξι κελεύειν τοὺς κήρυκας περιμένειν ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στράτευμα ὡς καλῶς ἔχειν ὀραῖσθαι πάντῃ φάλαγγα πυκνήν, ἐκ τῶν ὄπλων δὲ μηδένα καταφανῆ εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ αὐτός τε προῆλθε τοὺς τε εὐοπλοτάτους ἔχων καὶ εὐειδεστάτους τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς ταῦτ' ἔφρασεν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις, ἀνηρώτα πρῶτα τί βούλονται. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι περὶ σπονδῶν ἤκοιεν ἄνδρες οἵτινες ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τά τε παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ἀπαγγεῖλαι καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ. ὁ δὲ

2.3

Ὁ δὲ δὴ ἔγραψα ὅτι βασιλεὺς |panic, |be|accessible; |inspector; en-  
 |knocked out |trance; attack  
 |visible, |. . . τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρα πέμπων τὰ |tool  
 |conspicuous  
 παραδιδόναι ἐκέλευε, τότε δὲ ἅμα ἡλίῳ |cause to grow  
 |henchman, |τεμψε περὶ |libation, . . . οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ ἦλθον πρὸς  
 |functionary |treaty  
 τοὺς |vanguard, , ἐζήτουν τοὺς ἄρχοντας. ἐπειδὴ δὲ  
 |guard officer  
 |announce, |order, |vanguard, , Κλέαρχος τυχὼν τότε τὰς  
 |promise |guard officer  
 τάξεις ἐπισκοπῶν εἶπε τοῖς |vanguard, κελεύειν τοὺς  
 |guard officer  
 |hench- |wait for |as far` as|have leisure |πεὶ δὲ κατέστησε  
 |man, func- |(+gen);  
 |tionary |until  
 τὸ |army ὥς καλῶς ἔχειν ὀρᾶσθαι |every- |rank of battle  
 |where  
 |dense, |fre- τῶν |tool δὲ μηδένα |clearly seen εἶναι,  
 |quent; shrewd  
 ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ αὐτός τε |proceed, come out  
 τε εὖοπλοτάτους ἔχων καὶ |good-looking τῶν αὐτοῦ  
 |soldier, καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔφρασεν.  
 |mercenary  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις, |question πρῶτα τί  
 βούλονται. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι περὶ |libation, ἥκοιεν ἄνδρες  
 |treaty  
 οἵτινες ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τά τε παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς |Greek  
 |announce, or- |αὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν |Greek βασιλεῖ. ὁ δὲ  
 |der, promise

## 2.3

And now comes the proof of what I stated above—that the king was utterly taken aback by the sudden apparition of the army; only the day before, he had sent and demanded the surrender of their arms—and now, with the rising sun, came heralds sent by him to arrange a truce. These, having reached the advanced guard, asked for the generals. The guard reported their arrival; and Clearchus, who was busy inspecting the ranks, sent back word to the heralds that they must await his leisure. Having carefully arranged the troops so that from every side they might present the appearance of a compact battle line without a single unarmed man in sight, he summoned the ambassadors, and himself went forward to meet them with the soldiers, who for choice accoutrement and noble aspect were the flower of his force; a course which he had invited the other generals also to adopt.

And now, being face to face with the ambassadors, he questioned them as to what their wishes were. They replied that they had come to arrange a truce, and were persons competent to carry proposals from the king to the Hellenes and from the Hellenes to the king. He returned

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
 (intrans) ride away  
**ἀποδοκέω** decide against  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαγγέλλω** send news, proclaim  
**διατρίβω** (τι) wear down, delay  
 ~tribology  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**εἰκός** likely  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis

**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief ~hegemony  
**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet  
**μεθίστημι** change, substitute;  
 withdraw; change sides; (mid) send  
 away ~station  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**ὀκνέω** shrink from, hesitate; worry  
**πορίζω** bring about, provide  
**σπένδω** libate; (mid) make a treaty  
 ~spontaneous  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**τοίνυν** well, then

ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀπαγγέλλετε τοῖνυν αὐτῷ ὅτι μάχης δεῖ  
 πρῶτον· ἄριστον γὰρ οὐκ ἔστιν οὐδ' ὁ τολμήσων περὶ  
 σπονδῶν λέγειν τοῖς Ἑλλησι μὴ πορίσας ἄριστον. ταῦτα  
 ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀπήλυνον, καὶ ἦκον ταχύ· ᾧ  
 καὶ δῆλον ἦν ὅτι ἐγγὺς που βασιλεὺς ἦν ἢ ἄλλος τις ᾧ  
 ἐπετέτακτο ταῦτα πράττειν· ἔλεγον δὲ ὅτι εἰκότα δοκοῖεν  
 λέγειν βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἦκοιεν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες οἱ αὐτοὺς,  
 ἐὰν σπονδαὶ γένωνται, ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἔξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.  
 ὁ δὲ ἡρώτα εἰ αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι σπένδοιτο τοῖς ἰοῦσι  
 καὶ ἀπιούσιν, ἢ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἔσoinτο σπονδαί. οἱ δέ,  
 «Ἄπασιν,» ἔφασαν, «μέχρι ἂν βασιλεῖ τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν  
 διαγγελθῇ.» ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπον, μεταστησάμενος αὐτοὺς  
 ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο· καὶ ἐδόκει ταχὺ τὰς σπονδὰς  
 ποιεῖσθαι καὶ καθ' ἡσυχίαν ἐλθεῖν τε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ  
 λαβεῖν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε· «Δοκεῖ μὲν καμοὶ ταῦτα·  
 οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε ἀπαγγελῶ, ἀλλὰ διατρίψω ἔστ' ἂν  
 ὀκνήσωσιν οἱ ἄγγελοι μὴ ἀποδόξῃ ἡμῖν τὰς σπονδὰς  
 ποιήσασθαι· οἶμαί γε μέντοι,» ἔφη, «καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις



ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀπαγγέλλετε |well, then ἵτω ὅτι μάχης δεῖ  
 πρῶτον· ἄριστον γὰρ οὐκ ἔστιν οὐδ' ὁ τολμήσων περὶ

|libation, λέγειν τοῖς |Greek μὴ |bring ἄριστον. ταῦτα  
 |treaty |about,  
 ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἄγγελοι |expel, exclude, ward off; |provide  
 |conspicuous (intrans) ride away  
 καὶ |visible, ἵ, ἴτι |near που βασιλεὺς ἦν ἢ ἄλλος τις ὦ  
 |conspicuous

|enjoin; place ταῦτα πράττειν· ἔλεγον δὲ ὅτι |likely δοκοῖεν  
 |near

λέγειν βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἤκοιεν |leader ἔχοντες οἱ αὐτούς,

ἐὰν |libation, γένωνται, ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἔξουσι τὰ |fit, suitable  
 |treaty

ὁ δὲ |ask εἰ αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι |libate; (mid) οἷς ἰοῦσι  
 |make a treaty

καὶ ἀπιούσιν, ἣ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἔσονται |libation, οἱ δέ,  
 |treaty

«Ἄπασιν,» ἔφασαν, «|as far as, until |libate τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν

|send news, proclaim ἵ ἐ ταῦτα εἶπον, |change, substitute; withdraw; change  
 |sides; (mid) send away

ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο· καὶ ἐδόκει ταχὺ τὰς |libation,  
 |treaty

ποιεῖσθαι καὶ καθ' |peace and quiet τε ἐπὶ τὰ |fit, suitable καὶ

λαβεῖν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε· «Δοκεῖ μὲν κάμοι ταῦτα·

οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε |announce, or- ἰλλὰ |wear down, delay ἔν  
 |der, promise

|hesitate; οἱ ἄγγελοι μὴ ἀποδόξῃ ἡμῖν τὰς |libation,  
 |worry |treaty

ποιήσασθαι· οἶμαί γε μέντοι,» ἔφη, «καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις

answer to them: «Take back word then to your master, that we need a battle first, for we have had no breakfast; and he will be a brave man who will dare mention the word ‘truce’ to Hellenes without providing them with breakfast.” With this message the heralds rode off, but were back again in no time, which was a proof that the king, or some one appointed by him to transact the business, was hard by. They reported that «the message seemed reasonable to the king; they had now come bringing guides who, if a truce were arranged, would conduct them where they would get provisions.” Clearchus inquired «whether the truce was offered to the individual men merely as they went and came, or to all alike.” «To all,” they replied, «until the king receives your final answer.” When they had so spoken, Clearchus, having removed the ambassadors, held a council; and it was resolved to make a truce at once, and then quietly to go and secure provisions; and Clearchus said: «I agree to the resolution; still I do not propose to announce it at once, but to wile away time till the ambassadors begin to fear that we have decided against the

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχύνη** (ῥ) shame, dishonor

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. sin

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel

**ἀριστερός** left-hand

**αὐλέω** play (blow, toot)

**αὐλὼν** canyon, strait, canal

**βακτηρία** cane, wand

**βλαχεύω** (ᾱ) be lazy

**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge

**γεφυρόω** (ῥ) dam, move earth

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis

**διάβασις** -εως (f) crossing, passage  
~basis

**ἐκχόπτω** cut out, down, off

**ἐκλέγω** pick, single out

**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of ~petal

**ἐκπίτνω** fall out of

**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board ~basis

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe

**ὀπισθοφυλαχέω** guard the rear

**παίζω** play ~pediatrician

**παίω** hit

**πάλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas

**πηλός** clay, mud

**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of  
~plethora

**ποιόω** make of a certain quality

**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold,  
help

**σπένδω** libate; (mid) make a treaty  
~spontaneous

**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
~repudiate

**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous

**σπουδάζω** be busy, earnest ~repudiate

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy

**συσπουδάζω** work busily together

**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph

**ὕποπτεύω** guess, observe, be  
suspicious of

**φοῖνιξ** -χος (m) red or purple dye or  
color; bay (horse); palm tree

στρατιώταις τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον παρέσεσθαι.» ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει καιρὸς εἶναι, ἀπήγγελλεν ὅτι σπένδοιτο, καὶ εὐθὺς ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευε πρὸς τὰπιτήδεια.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἡγούντο, Κλέαρχος μέντοι ἐπορεύετο τὰς μὲν σπονδὰς ποιησάμενος, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἔχων ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς ὠπισθοφυλάκει. καὶ ἐνετύγχανον τάφροις καὶ αὐλῶσιν ὕδατος πλήρεσιν, ὥς μὴ δύνασθαι διαβαίνειν ἄνευ γεφυρῶν· ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο διαβάσεις ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων οἱ ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξέκοπτον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἦν Κλέαρχον καταμαθεῖν ὥς ἐπεστάτει, ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ ἔχων, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ βακτηρίαν· καὶ εἴ τις αὐτῷ δοκοίη τῶν πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένων βλακεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον ἔπαισεν ἄν, καὶ ἅμα αὐτὸς προσελάμβανεν εἰς τὸν πηλὸν ἐμβαίνων· ὥστε πᾶσιν αἰσχύνῃν εἶναι μὴ οὐ συσπουνδάζειν. καὶ ἐτάχθησαν πρὸς αὐτὸ οἱ εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτη γεγονότες· ἐπεὶ δὲ Κλέαρχον ἐώρων σπουνδάζοντα, προσελάμβανον καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι. πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὁ Κλέαρχος ἔσπευδεν, ὑποπτεύων μὴ αἰεὶ

|soldier, mercenary τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον παρέσεσθαι.» ἐπεὶ δὲ

ἔδοκει καιρὸς εἶναι, |announce, order, libate; (mid) αἰ εὐθὺς  
|promise |make a treaty

ἡγείσθαι ἐκέλευε πρὸς |fit, suitable

Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἡγοῦντο, Κλέαρχος μέντοι ἐπορεύετο τὰς μὲν

|libation, ποιησάμενος, τὸ δὲ |army ἔχων ἐν τάξει,  
|treaty

καὶ αὐτὸς |guard the rear καὶ ἐνετύγχανον |ditch καὶ

αὐλώσιν ὕδατος |full, complete; μὴ δύνασθαι |pass over, cross  
|(+gen) full of

|away from; nōt having; |make of a |crossing, ἐκ τῶν |red, red dye;  
|not needing |certain qual- |passage |palm tree

οἱ ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκυῖτες, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξέκοπτον. καὶ

|there, here, Κλέαρχον |examine, ὡς ἐπεστάται, ἐν μὲν τῇ  
|observe

|left-hand χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ ἔχων, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ |cane, wand καὶ

εἴ τις αὐτῷ δοκοίῃ τῶν πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένων |be lazy

|pick, single τὸν |fit, suitable ἔπαισεν ἄν, καὶ ἅμα αὐτὸς  
|out

|add, borrow, take εἰς τὸν πηλὸν |step on, board ὥστε πᾶσιν  
|hold, help

|shame, εἶναι μὴ οὐ |work busily together. ἑτάχθησαν πρὸς  
|dishonor

αὐτὸ οἱ εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτη γεγονότες· ἐπεὶ δὲ Κλέαρχον

ἑώρων |be busy, earnest |add, borrow, take καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι.  
|hold, help

πολὺ δὲ μάλλον ὁ Κλέαρχος |'push on, 'guess, observe, αἰεὶ  
|get going, |be suspicious of  
|hurry

truce; though I suspect," he added, «the same fear will be operative on the minds of our soldiers also." As soon as the right moment seemed to have arrived, he delivered his answer in favour of the truce, and bade the ambassadors at once conduct them to the provisions.

So these led the way; and Clearchus, without relaxing precaution, in spite of having secured a truce, marched after them with his army in line and himself in command of the rearguard. Over and over again they encountered trenches and conduits so full of water that they could not be crossed without bridges; but they contrived well enough for these by means of trunks of palm trees which had fallen, or which they cut down for the occasion. And here Clearchus's system of superintendence was a study in itself; as he stood with a spear in his left hand and a stick in the other; and when it seemed to him there was any dawdling among the parties told off to the work, he would pick out the right man and down would come the stick; nor, at the same time, was he above plunging into the mud and lending a hand himself, so that every one else was forced for very shame to display equal alacrity. The men told off for the business were the men of thirty years of age; but even the elder men, when they saw the energy of Clearchus, could not resist lending their aid also. What stimulated the haste of Clearchus was the suspicion

*vocabulary*

ἀποδείκνυμι (ō) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
 ἀπόκειμαι be stored up, put aside  
 ἀπόλεκτος chosen, picked  
 ἀποτίθηναι put away ~thesis  
 ἄρδω give water  
 αὐαίνω to dry; (mp) wither  
 βάλανος (f) nut; pin, bolt  
 δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot  
 ἐγκέφαλος brain  
 εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form  
 ~-oid  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἐνείμι be in ~ion  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἐξαίρῃ pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
 ~heresy  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 ἐψητός boiled  
 ἡγεμῶν -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief ~hegemony  
 ἡδονή pleasure  
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
 ἡλεκτρον amber ~electron  
 θαυμάσιος wonderful  
 ιδιότης -τος (f, 3) property, character  
 κάλλος -εος (n, 3) beauty  
 ~kaleidoscope

κεφαλαλγής causing a headache  
 κώμη village  
 μέγεθος -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
 ξηραίνω dry up ~xeriscape  
 ὅθεν whence  
 οἰκέτης -ου (m, 1) household; house  
 slave  
 ὄξος ὄξους (n, 3) common wine;  
 vinegar  
 ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view  
 ~thanatopsis  
 πλήρης full, complete; (+gen) full of  
 ~plethora  
 πορεία gait, march  
 πότος wine drinking  
 προφαίνω show; pass: appear  
 ~photon  
 σῖτος grain, bread, food ~parasite  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 σφόδρα very much  
 τάφος (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph  
 τράγημα fruit or sweetmeat  
 ὑποπτέω guess, observe, be  
 suspicious of  
 φοῖνιξ -χος (m) red or purple dye or  
 color; bay (horse); palm tree

οὕτω πλήρεις εἶναι τὰς τάφρους ὕδατος οὐ γὰρ ἦν ὥρα οἷα τὸ πεδῖον ἄρδεν, ἀλλ' ἵνα ἤδη πολλὰ προφαίνοντο τοῖς Ἑλλησι δεινὰ εἰς τὴν πορείαν, τούτου ἔνεκα βασιλέα ὑπώπτευεν ἐπὶ τὸ πεδῖον τὸ ὕδωρ ἀφεικέναι.

Πορευόμενοι δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας ὅθεν ἀπέδειξαν οἱ ἡγεμόνες λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐνὴν δὲ σῖτος πολὺς καὶ οἶνος φοινίκων καὶ ὄξος ἐψητὸν ἀπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν. αὐταὶ δὲ αἱ βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων οἷας μὲν ἐν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἔστιν ἰδεῖν τοῖς οἰκέταις ἀπέκειντο, αἱ δὲ τοῖς δεσπόταις ἀποκείμεναι ἦσαν ἀπόλεκτοι, θαυμάσαι τοῦ κάλλους καὶ μεγέθους, ἡ δὲ ὄψις ἡλέκτρον οὐδὲν διέφερεν· τὰς δὲ τινὰς ξηραίνοντες τραγήματα ἀπετίθεσαν. καὶ ἦν καὶ παρὰ πότον ἡδὺ μὲν, κεφαλαλγὲς δέ. ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὸν ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοίνικος πρῶτον ἔφαγον οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ ἐθαύμασαν τό τε εἶδος καὶ τὴν ιδιότητα τῆς ἡδονῆς. ἦν δὲ σφόδρα καὶ τοῦτο κεφαλαλγὲς. ὁ δὲ φοῖνιξ ὅθεν ἐξαιρεθείη ὁ ἐγκέφαλος ὅλος ηὐαίνετο.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ παρὰ μεγάλου



οὕτω πλήρεις εἶναι τὰς τάφρους ὕδατος οὐ γὰρ ἦν ὥρα

οἷα τὸ πεδίον |give water·λλ' ἵνα ἤδη πολλὰ |show; pass: appear

τοῖς |Greek δεινὰ εἰς τὴν |gait, , τούτου ἔνεκα βασιλέα  
|march

|guess, observe, τὸ πεδίον τὸ ὕδωρ ἀφεικέναι.  
|be suspicious of

Πορευόμενοι δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας ὅθεν ἀπέδειξαν οἱ

ἡγεμόνες λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐνὴν δὲ σίτος πολὺς καὶ

οἶνος |red, red dye; com- |boiled ἀπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν. αὐταὶ  
|palm tree |mon

δὲ αἱ |nut; pin, bolt wine; red dye; ἄς μὲν ἐν τοῖς |Greek  
|palm tree  
|gai

ἔστιν ἰδεῖν τοῖς οἰκέταις |be stored up, ἰὶ δὲ τοῖς δεσπόταις  
|put aside

|be stored up, ἦσαν |chosen, |wonderful τοῦ |beauty καὶ  
|put aside |picked

μεγέθους, ἡ δὲ ὄψις |amber οὐδὲν διέφερεν· τὰς δέ

τινας |dry up |fruit or sweet-|put away καὶ ἦν καὶ  
|meat

παρὰ |wine drinking ἐν, |causing a headache ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὸν

|brain τοῦ |red, red dye; ὦτον ἔφαγον οἱ στρατιῶται,  
|palm tree

καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ ἐθαύμασαν τό τε εἶδος καὶ τὴν |property, τῆς  
|character

|pleasure ἦν δὲ σφόδρα καὶ τοῦτο |causing a headache |red, red dye; palm  
|tree

ὅθεν ἐξαιρεθείη ὁ |brain ὅλος |to dry; (mp) wither

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ παρὰ μεγάλου

in his mind that these trenches were not, as a rule, so full of water, since it was not the season to irrigate the plain; and he fancied that the king had let the water on for the express purpose of vividly presenting to the Hellenes the many dangers with which their march was threatened at the very start.

Proceeding on their way they reached some villages, where their guides indicated to them that they would find provisions. They were found to contain plenty of corn, and wine made from palm dates, and an acidulated beverage extracted by boiling from the same fruit. As to the palm nuts or dates themselves, it was noticeable that the sort which we are accustomed to see in Hellas were set aside for the domestic servants; those put aside for the masters are picked specimens, and are simply marvellous for their beauty and size, looking like great golden lumps of amber; some specimens they dried and preserved as sweetmeats. Sweet enough they were as an accompaniment of wine, but apt to give headache. Here, too, for the first time in their lives, the men tasted the brain of the palm. No one could help being struck by the beauty of this object, and the peculiarity of its delicious flavour; but this, like the dried fruits, was exceedingly apt to give headache. When this cabbage or brain has been removed from the palm the whole tree withers from top to bottom.

In these villages they remained three days,

*vocabulary*

**ἀγγελία** message, news ~angel  
**ἀγγέλλω** carry a message, announce  
 ~angel  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἀμήχανος** helpless, impossible  
 ~mechanism  
**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon  
**ἀποσώζω** save from  
**ἀχάριστος** ungracious, unpleasant  
 ~eucharist  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**βοήθεια** help  
**γείτων** -ονος (f) neighbor  
**διελαύνω** drive through, over ~elastic  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐπιστρατεύω** march against  
**ἐρμηνεύς** -ος (m) interpreter  
**εὔρημα** invention; windfall  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὁμέτερος** (ῶ) yours  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

βασιλέως ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς  
 ἀδελφὸς καὶ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι τρεῖς· δοῦλοι δὲ πολλοὶ  
 εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 στρατηγοί, ἔλεγε πρῶτος Τισσαφέρνης δι' ἑρμηνέως  
 τοιάδε. «Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, γείτων οἰκῶ τῇ  
 Ἑλλάδι, καὶ ἐπεὶ ὑμᾶς εἶδον εἰς πολλὰ καὶ ἀμήχανα  
 πεπτωκότας, εὖρημα ἐποιησάμην εἴ πως δυναίμην παρὰ  
 βασιλέως αἰτήσασθαι δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι ὑμᾶς εἰς  
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα. οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν οὐκ ἀχαρίστως μοι ἔχειν  
 οὔτε πρὸς ὑμῶν οὔτε πρὸς τῆς πάσης Ἑλλάδος. ταῦτα  
 δὲ γνοὺς ἡτούμην βασιλέα, λέγων αὐτῷ ὅτι δικαίως  
 ἂν μοι χαρίζοιτο, ὅτι αὐτῷ Κῦρόν τε ἐπιστρατεύοντα  
 πρῶτος ἡγγεῖλα καὶ βοήθειαν ἔχων ἅμα τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ  
 ἀφικόμην, καὶ μόνος τῶν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας τεταγμένων  
 οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ διήλασα καὶ συνέμειξα βασιλεῖ ἐν τῷ  
 ὑμετέρῳ στρατοπέδῳ ἔνθα βασιλεὺς ἀφίκετο, ἐπεὶ Κῦρον  
 ἀπέκτεινε καὶ τοὺς ξὺν Κύρῳ βαρβάρους ἐδίωξε σὺν  
 τοῖσδε τοῖς παροῦσι νῦν μετ' ἐμοῦ, οἵπερ αὐτῷ

βασιλέως ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς  
 ἀδελφὸς καὶ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι τρεῖς· δοῦλοι δὲ πολλοὶ  
 εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ |encounter, come ὑποῖν ἰί τῶν |Greek  
 στρατηγοί, ἔλεγε πρῶτος Τισσαφέρνης δι' |interpreter  
 |such «Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες |Greek , |neighbor |inhabit ἦ  
 Ἑλλάδι, καὶ ἐπεὶ ὑμᾶς εἶδον εἰς πολλὰ καὶ |helpless,  
 |impossible  
 πεπτωκότας, |invention; , |τοιησάμην εἴ πως δυναίμην παρὰ  
 |windfall  
 βασιλέως |ask for δοῦναι ἐμοὶ |save from ὑμᾶς εἰς  
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα. οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν οὐκ |ungracious, μοι ἔχειν  
 |unpleasant  
 οὔτε πρὸς ὑμῶν οὔτε πρὸς τῆς πάσης Ἑλλάδος. ταῦτα  
 δὲ γνοὺς |ask for βασιλέα, λέγων αὐτῷ ὅτι δικαίως  
 ἂν μοι |gratify , ὅτι αὐτῷ Κῦρόν τε |march against  
 πρῶτος |carry a message, |help ἔχων ἅμα τῇ |message, news  
 |announce  
 ἀφικόμην, καὶ μόνος τῶν κατὰ τοὺς |Greek τεταγμένων  
 οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ |drive καὶ συνέμειξα βασιλεῖ ἐν τῷ  
 |through,  
 |yours στρατοπέδῳ ἐνθα βασιλεὺς ἀφίκετο, ἐπεὶ Κῦρον  
 |over  
 ἀπέκτεινε καὶ τοὺς ξὺν Κύρῳ |non-Greek ἐδίωξε σὺν  
 τοῖσδε τοῖς παροῦσι νῦν μετ' ἐμοῦ, οἵπερ αὐτῷ

and a deputation from the great king arrived — Tissaphernes and the king's brother in law and three other Persians — with a retinue of many slaves. As soon as the generals of the Hellenes had presented themselves, Tissaphernes opened the proceedings with the following speech, through the lips of an interpreter: «Men of Hellas, I am your next-door neighbour in Hellas. Therefore was it that I, when I saw into what a sea of troubles you were fallen, regarded it as a godsend, if by any means I might obtain, as a boon from the king, the privilege of bringing you back in safety to your own country: and that, I take it, will earn me gratitude from you and all Hellas. In this determination I preferred my request to the king; I claimed it as a favour which was fairly my due; for was it not I who first announced to him the hostile approach of Cyrus? who supported that announcement by the aid I brought; who alone among the officers confronted with the Hellenes in battle did not flee, but charged right through and united my troops with the king inside your camp, where he was arrived, having slain Cyrus; it was I, lastly, who gave chase to the barbarians under Cyrus, with the help of those here present with me

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar

**ἀντιποιέω** do in return; (mid) seek, claim

**ἀπαράσκευος** unprepared

**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
~practice

**Ἕλληγν** Greek

**ἐνθάδε** here, hither

**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go searching through

**εὖπραχτος** easy; wealthy

**λυπέω** (ῶ) annoy, distress

**μεθίστημι** change, substitute;

withdraw; change sides; (mid) send away ~station

**μέτριος** medium, moderate

**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy

**προδίδωμι** betray

**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive; prediction ~fame

**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy

**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
~volunteer

**συνέρχομαι** come together

**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand; submit to

εἰσι πιστότατοι. καὶ περὶ μὲν τούτων ὑπέσχετό μοι  
 βουλεύεσθαι· ἐρέσθαι δέ με ὑμᾶς ἐκέλευεν ἐλθόντα τίνος  
 ἔνεκεν ἐστρατεύσατε ἐπ' αὐτόν. καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν  
 μετρίως ἀποκρίνασθαι, ἵνα μοι εὐπρακτότερον ἢ ἐάν τι  
 δύνωμαι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν παρ' αὐτοῦ διαπραξάσθαι.»

Πρὸς ταῦτα μεταστάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐβουλεύοντο·  
 καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο, Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεγεν· «Ἡμεῖς οὔτε  
 συνήλθομεν ὡς βασιλεῖ πολεμήσοντας οὔτε ἐπορευόμεθα  
 ἐπὶ βασιλέα, ἀλλὰ πολλὰς προφάσεις Κῦρος ἡΐρισκεν,  
 ὡς καὶ σὺ οἶσθα, ἵνα ὑμᾶς τε ἀπαρασκεύους λάβοι  
 καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε ἀγάγοι. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἤδη αὐτὸν ἐωρῶμεν  
 ἐν δεινῷ ὄντα, ἡσχύνθημεν καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους  
 προδοῦναι αὐτόν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ παρέχοντες  
 ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς εὖ ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος τέθνηκεν, οὔτε  
 βασιλεῖ ἀντιποιοῦμεθα τῆς ἀρχῆς οὔτ' ἔστιν ὅτου ἔνεκα  
 βουλοίμεθα ἂν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν κακῶς ποιεῖν, οὐδ'  
 αὐτὸν ἀποκτεῖναι ἂν ἐθέλομεν, πορευοίμεθα δ' ἂν οἴκαδε,  
 εἴ τις ἡμᾶς μὴ λυποίῃ· ἀδικοῦντα μέντοι πειρασόμεθα σὺν



εἰσι |faithful;  
|trustworthy καὶ περὶ μὲν τούτων |promise μοι

βουλεύεσθαι· |ask, search through ᾧ ἐκέλευεν ἐλθόντα τίνος

ἔνεκεν |make an expedition, war, campaign αὐτόν. καὶ |give advice; (mid) consult ὑμῖν

|medium, moderate ἀποκρίνασθαι, ἵνα μοι |easy; wealthy ἥ ἂν τι

δύναμαι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν παρ' αὐτοῦ |travel over, accomplish ac- »

Πρὸς ταῦτα |change, substitute; Greek ἐβουλεύοντο·  
|withdraw; change  
καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο, Κλεάρχος δ' ἔλεγεν· «Ἡμεῖς οὔτε  
|sides; (mid) send  
|away

|come together ὡς βασιλεῖ πολεμήσοντες οὔτε ἐπορευόμεθα

ἐπὶ βασιλέα, ἀλλὰ πολλὰς |pretext; motive; ἵστος ἤρρισκεν,  
|prediction

ὥς καὶ σὺ εὖ οἶσθα, ἵνα ὑμᾶς τε |unprepared λάβοι

καὶ ἡμᾶς |here, ἀγάγοι. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἤδη αὐτὸν ἐωρῶμεν  
|hither

ἐν δεινῷ ὄντα, |spoil, disgrace καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους

|betray αὐτόν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ παρέχοντες

ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς εὖ ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος τέθνηκεν, οὔτε

βασιλεῖ |do in return; τῆς ἀρχῆς οὔτ' ἔστιν ὅτου ἔνεκα  
|(mid) seek, claim

βουλοίμεθα ἂν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν κακῶς ποιεῖν, οὐδ'

αὐτὸν ἀποκτεῖναι ἂν ἐθέλοιμεν, πορευοίμεθα δ' ἂν |homeward

εἴ τις ἡμᾶς μὴ |annoy, ἀδικοῦντα μέντοι πειρασόμεθα σὺν  
|distress

at this moment, which are also among the trustiest followers of our lord the king. Now, I counsel you to give a moderate answer, so that it may be easier for me to carry out my design, if haply I may obtain from him some good thing on your behalf.”

Thereupon the Hellenes retired and took counsel. Then they answered, and Clearchus was their spokesman: «We neither mustered as a body to make war against the king, nor was our march conducted with that object. But it was Cyrus, as you know, who invented many and divers pretexts, that he might take you off your guard, and transport us hither. Yet, after a while, when we saw that he was in sore straits, we were ashamed in the sight of God and man to betray him, whom we had permitted for so long a season to benefit us. But now that Cyrus is dead, we set up no claim to his kingdom against the king himself; there is neither person nor thing for the sake of which we would care to injure the king’s country; we would not choose to kill him if we could, rather we would march straight home, if we were not molested; but, God helping us, we will retaliate on

*vocabulary*

**ἄδολος** honest, genuine

**ἀντιλέγω** contradict, oppose

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel

**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue

**ἀσινής** unharmed

**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
~practice

**Ἑλλην** Greek

**ἔξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
overcome; (active) defeat

**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
overcome; (active) defeat

**καίπερ** even if

**μέχρι** as far as, until

**ὄμνυμι** (ὕ) swear

**ὅπου** where

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy

**ποτή** flight? ~petal

**ποτός** potable

**πρίamai** buy

**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite

**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
campaign ~strategy

**ὕστεραίος** the next; later

**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy

**φίλιος** friendly

**φροντίζω** consider, ponder

**ὠνέομαι** buy

τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύνασθαι· ἐὰν μέντοι τις ἡμᾶς καὶ εὖ ποιῶν  
 ὑπάρχει, καὶ τούτου εἷς γε δύναμιν οὐχ ἡττησόμεθα εὖ  
 ποιούντες.

Ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, «Ταῦτα,»  
 ἔφη, «ἐγὼ ἀπαγγελῶ βασιλεῖ καὶ ὑμῖν πάλιν τὰ παρ’  
 ἐκείνου· μέχρι δ’ ἂν ἐγὼ ἤκω αἱ σπονδαὶ μενόντων·  
 ἀγορὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς παρέξομεν.» καὶ εἰς μὲν τὴν ὑστεραίαν  
 οὐχ ἦκεν· ὥσθ’ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐφρόντιζον· τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ  
 ἡκων ἔλεγεν ὅτι διαπεπραγμένος ἦκοι παρὰ βασιλέως  
 δοθῆναι αὐτῷ σώζειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καίπερ πάνυ πολλῶν  
 ἀντιλεγόντων ὥς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶη βασιλεῖ ἀφείναι τοὺς ἐφ’  
 ἑαυτὸν στρατευσαμένους. τέλος δὲ εἶπε· «Καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν  
 ὑμῖν πιστὰ λαβεῖν παρ’ ἡμῶν ἢ μὴν φιλίαν παρέξειν ὑμῖν  
 τὴν χώραν καὶ ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀγορὰν  
 παρέχοντας· ὅπου δ’ ἂν μὴ ἢ πρίασθαι, λαμβάνειν ὑμᾶς ἐκ  
 τῆς χώρας ἐάσομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὑμᾶς δὲ αὖ ἡμῖν δεήσει  
 ὁμόσαι ἢ μὴν πορεύεσθαι ὥς διὰ φιλίας ἀσινῶς σῖτα καὶ  
 ποτὰ λαμβάνοντας ὁπόταν μὴ ἀγορὰν παρέχωμεν, ἐὰν δὲ

τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύνασθαι· ἐὰν μέντοι τις ἡμᾶς καὶ εὖ ποιῶν  
ὑπάρχη, καὶ τούτου εἰς γε δύναμιν οὐχ ἡττησόμεθα εὖ  
ποιούντες.

Ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, «Ταῦτα,»  
ἔφη, «ἐγὼ |announce, or |der, promise ασιλεῖ καὶ ὑμῖν πάλιν τὰ παρ'  
ἐκείνου· |as far as, until ἐγὼ ἤκω αἱ |libation, μενόντων·  
|treaty  
ἀγορὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς παρέξομεν.» καὶ εἰς μὲν τὴν |the next; later  
οὐχ ἦκεν· ὥσθ' οἱ |Greek |consider, τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ  
|ponder  
ἦκων ἔλεγεν ὅτι |travel over, accom- ἦκοι παρὰ βασιλέως  
|plish  
δοθῆναι αὐτῷ σώξειν τοὺς |Greek , |even if πάνυ πολλῶν  
|contradict, ὥς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶη βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς ἐφ'  
|oppose  
ἑαυτὸν |make an expedition, τέλος δὲ εἶπε· «Καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν  
|war, campaign  
ὑμῖν |faithful; ἔιν παρ' ἡμῶν ἢ μὴν φιλίαν παρέξειν ὑμῖν  
|trustworthy  
τὴν χώραν καὶ |honest, |lead away, back ἔν Ἑλλάδα ἀγορὰν  
|genuine  
παρέχοντας· |where ὅ ἂν μὴ ἢ πρίασθαι, λαμβάνειν ὑμᾶς ἐκ  
τῆς χώρας ἐάσομεν τὰ |fit, suitable ὑμᾶς δὲ αὖ ἡμῖν δεήσει  
ὁμόσαι ἢ μὴν πορεύεσθαι ὥς διὰ |friendly |un- |grain, καὶ  
|harmed |bread,  
ποτὰ λαμβάνοντας ὁπόταν μὴ ἀγορὰν παρέχωμεν, εἰ δὲ  
|food

all who injure us. On the other hand, if any be found to benefit us, we do not mean to be outdone in kindly deeds, as far as in us lies.”

So he spoke, and Tissaphernes listened and replied: «That answer will I take back to the king and bring you word from him again. Until I come again, let the truce continue, and we will furnish you with a market.” All next day he did not come back, and the Hellenes were troubled with anxieties, but on the third day he arrived with the news that he had obtained from the king the boon he asked; he was permitted to save the Hellenes, though there were many gainsayers who argued that it was not seemly for the king to let those who had marched against him depart in peace. And at last he said: «You may now, if you like, take pledges from us, that we will make the countries through which you pass friendly to you, and will lead you back without treachery into Hellas, and will furnish you with a market; and wherever you cannot purchase, we will permit you to take provisions from the district. You, on your side, must swear that you will march as through a friendly country, without damage—merely taking food and drink wherever we fail to supply a market—or, if we afford a

*vocabulary*

**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἐνδηλος** visible, manifest  
**ἐνιοι** some  
**ἐπειδὴν** when, after  
**ἐπιστρατεία** march against  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**μνησικακέω** hold a grudge  
**ὄμνυμι** (υ) swear  
**παραθαρσύνω** encourage  
**παροίχομαι** pass, keep going  
**περιμένω** wait for  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
 station ~strategy  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**ὠνέομαι** buy

παρέχωμεν ἄγοράν, ὠνουμένους ἔξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.

Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ δεξιὰς ἔδοσαν Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς καὶ ἔλαβον παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Τισσαφέρνης εἶπε· «Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπειμι ὡς βασιλέα· ἐπειδὰν δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἃ δέομαι, ἥξω συσκευασάμενος ὡς ἀπάξων ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ ἀρχήν.»

## 2.4

Μετὰ ταῦτα περιέμενον Τισσαφέρνην οἳ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἡμέρας πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν. ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς Ἀριαῖον καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναγκαῖοι καὶ πρὸς τοὺς σὺν ἐκείνῳ Περσῶν τινες, οἳ παρεθάρρυνόν τε καὶ δεξιὰς ἐνίοις παρὰ βασιλέως ἔφερον μὴ μνησικακήσειν βασιλέα αὐτοῖς τῆς σὺν Κύρῳ ἐπιστρατείας μηδὲ ἄλλου μηδενὸς τῶν παροιχομένων. τούτων δὲ γιγνομένων ἔνδηλοι ἦσαν



παρέχωμεν ἀγοράν, |buy

ἔξειν τὰ |fit, suitable

Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ δεξιὰς ἔδοσαν Τισσαφέρνης  
καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς τοῖς τῶν |Greek  
στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς καὶ ἔλαβον παρὰ τῶν |Greek  
μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Τισσαφέρνης εἶπε· «Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπειμι  
ὡς βασιλέα· |when, after δὲ |travel over, ac- ἂ δέομαι, ἥξω  
|pack up ὡς |lead away, back εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ  
αὐτὸς ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὴν ἐμαντοῦ ἀρχήν.»

## 2.4

Μετὰ ταῦτα |wait for Τισσαφέρνην οἱ τε |Greek  
καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος |near ἀλλήλων |encamp or take up sta- ἡμέρας  
|tion  
πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν. ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς Ἀριαῖον  
καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι |coerced, coerc- ἰ πρὸς τοὺς  
|ing, slavery  
σὺν ἐκείνῳ Περσῶν τινες, οἳ |encourage τε καὶ δεξιὰς  
|some παρὰ βασιλέως ἔφερον μὴ |hold a grudge βασιλέα  
αὐτοῖς τῆς σὺν Κύρῳ |march against μηδὲ ἄλλου μηδενὸς  
τῶν |pass, keep going . τούτων δὲ γιγνομένων |visible, ἦσαν  
|manifest

market, you shall only obtain provisions by paying for them.” This was agreed to, and oaths and pledges exchanged between them — Tissaphernes and the king’s brother in law upon the one side, and the generals and officers of the Hellenes on the other. After this Tissaphernes said: «And now I go back to the king; as soon as I have transacted what I have a mind to, I will come back, ready equipped, to lead you away to Hellas, and to return myself to my own dominion.”

#### 2.4

After these things the Hellenes and Ariaeus waited for Tissaphernes, being encamped close to one another: for more than twenty days they waited, during which time there came visitors to Ariaeus, his brother and other kinsfolk. To those under him came certain other Persians, encouraging them and bearing pledges to some of them from the king himself — that he would bear no grudge against them on account of the part they bore in the expedition against him with Cyrus, or for aught else of the things which were past. Whilst these overtures were being made,

*vocabulary***ἀλίζω** gather, assemble**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel**ἄπορος** impassable, difficult**ἀποσκάπτω** intercept with trenches**ἀποτειχίζω** wall off**ἀρέσκω** please, satisfy; make amends**διασπείρω** scatter, dissipate**ἐκὼν** willingly, on purpose; giving in  
too easily**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐνθυμέομαι** (υ) take to heart**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐπὶ** when, after**ἐπισιτίζομαι** (ιι) take supplies**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
~station**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
direct, stop ~station**καταγελάω** laugh at, deride**ὅθεν** whence**πότε** when?**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
~ion**προσέχω** direct to; think about**προσίημι** be allowed near**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
campaign ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τοσόσδε** this much**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away  
from ~demagogue

οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον ἦττον προσέχοντες τοῖς Ἑλλησι τὸν νοῦν· ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τοῖς μὲν πολλοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἤρεσκον, ἀλλὰ προσιόντες τῷ Κλέαρχῳ ἔλεγον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς· «Τί μένομεν; ἢ οὐκ ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι ἂν περὶ παντὸς ποιήσαιτο, ἵνα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις Ἑλλησι φόβος εἴη ἐπὶ βασιλέα μέγαν στρατεύειν; καὶ νῦν μὲν ἡμᾶς ὑπάγεται μένειν διὰ τὸ διεσπάρθαι αὐτοῦ τὸ στράτευμα· ἐπὰν δὲ πάλιν ἀλίσθῃ αὐτῷ ἡ στρατιά, οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως οὐκ ἐπιθήσεται ἡμῖν. ἴσως δέ που ἢ ἀποσκάπτει τι ἢ ἀποτεριχίζει, ὥς ἄπορος εἴη ἡ ὁδός. οὐ γάρ ποτε ἐκὼν γε βουλήσεται ἡμᾶς ἐλθόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀπαγγεῖλαι ὥς ἡμεῖς τοσοῦδε ὄντες ἐνικῶμεν τὸν βασιλέα ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ καὶ καταγελάσαντες ἀπήλθομεν.» Κλέαρχος δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο τοῖς ταῦτα λέγουσιν· «Ἐγὼ ἐνθυμουμαι μὲν καὶ ταῦτα πάντα· ἐννοῶ δ' ὅτι εἰ νῦν ἄπιμεν, δόξομεν ἐπὶ πολέμῳ ἀπιέναι καὶ παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς ποιεῖν. ἔπειτα πρῶτον μὲν ἀγορὰν οὐδεὶς παρέξει ἡμῖν οὐδὲ ὅθεν ἐπισιτιούμεθα· αὖθις

οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον ἦττον |direct to; think τοῖς |Greek τὸν νοῦν·  
 |about  
 ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τοῖς μὲν πολλοῖς τῶν |Greek οὐκ  
 |please, satisfy; ἃ προσιόντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἔλεγον καὶ τοῖς  
 |make amends  
 ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς· «Τί μένομεν; ἢ οὐκ ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι  
 βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι ἂν περὶ παντὸς ποιήσαιτο, ἵνα  
 καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις |Greek φόβος εἴη ἐπὶ βασιλέα μέγαν  
 |make an expedition, ἣν μὲν ἡμᾶς |lead μένειν διὰ τὸ  
 |war, campaign  
 |scatter, αὐτοῦ τὸ |army |when, δὲ πάλιν |gather,  
 |dissipate |after |assemble  
 αὐτῷ ἢ στρατιά, οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως οὐκ ἐπιθήσεται ἡμῖν.  
 ἴσως δέ που ἢ |intercept with τι ἢ |wall off , ὥς |impassable,  
 |trenches |difficult  
 εἴη ἡ ὁδός. οὐ γάρ ποτε |willingly - βουλήσεται ἡμᾶς  
 ἐλθόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα |announce, or- ὥς ἡμεῖς |this much  
 |der, promise  
 ὄντες ἐνικῶμεν τὸν βασιλέα ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ καὶ  
 |laugh at, deride ἀπῆλθομεν.» Κλέαρχος δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο  
 τοῖς ταῦτα λέγουσιν· «Ἐγὼ |take to heart μὲν καὶ ταῦτα  
 πάντα· |consider ὅτι εἰ νῦν ἄπιμεν, δόξομεν ἐπὶ πολέμῳ  
 ἀπιέναι καὶ παρὰ τὰς |libation, ποιεῖν. ἔπειτα πρῶτον μὲν  
 |treaty  
 ἀγορὰν οὐδεὶς παρέξει ἡμῖν οὐδὲ |when take supplies αὐθις

Ariaeus and his friends gave manifest signs of paying less attention to the Hellenes, so much so that, if for no other reason, the majority of the latter were not well pleased, and they came to Clearchus and the other generals, asking what they were waiting for. «Do we not know full well,” they said, «that the king would give a great deal to destroy us, so that other Hellenes may take warning and think twice before they march against the king. To-day it suits his purpose to induce us to stop here, because his army is scattered; but as soon as he has got together another armament, attack us most certainly he will. How do we know he is not at this moment digging away at trenches, or running up walls, to make our path impassable. It is not to be supposed that he will desire us to return to Hellas with a tale how a handful of men like ourselves beat the king at his own gates, laughed him to scorn, and then came home again.” Clearchus replied: «I too am keenly aware of all this; but I reason thus: if we turn our backs now, they will say, we mean war and are acting contrary to the truce, and then what follows? First of all, no one will furnish us with a market or means of providing ourselves with food. Next, we shall have no

*vocabulary*

**ἄδύνατος** unable; impossible

**ἄπιστος** not trusting, not trustworthy  
~stand

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**γάμος** wedding, sex ~bigamy

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis

**εἴπερ** if indeed

**Ἕλληγ** Greek

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἐπιорκέω** swear falsely ~oath

**ἐσσομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat

**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat

**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat

**κωλύω** (ὑ) hinder, prevent

**ὄμνυμι** (ὑ) swear

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy

**προθυμέομαι** (ὑ) be eager

δὲ ὁ ἡγησόμενος οὐδεὶς ἔσται· καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα ποιούντων  
 ἡμῶν εὐθύς Ἀριαῖος ἀφεστήξει· ὥστε φίλος ἡμῖν οὐδεὶς  
 λελεύβεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ πρόσθεν ὄντες πολέμιοι ἡμῖν  
 ἔσονται. ποταμὸς δ' εἰ μὲν τις καὶ ἄλλος ἄρα ἡμῖν  
 ἐστὶ διαβατέος οὐκ οἶδα· τὸν δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην ἴσμεν ὅτι  
 ἀδύνατον διαβῆναι κωλυόντων πολεμίων. οὐ μὲν δὴ ἂν  
 μάχεσθαι γε δέη, ἵππεῖς εἰσιν ἡμῖν ξύμμαχοι, τῶν δὲ  
 πολεμίων ἵππεῖς εἰσιν οἱ πλείστοι καὶ πλείστου ἄξιοι·  
 ὥστε νικῶντες μὲν τίνα ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν; ἡττωμένων  
 δὲ οὐδένα οἶόν τε σωθῆναι. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν βασιλέα, ᾧ  
 οὕτω πολλά ἐστὶ τὰ σύμμαχα, εἴπερ προθυμεῖται ἡμᾶς  
 ἀπολέσαι, οὐκ οἶδα ὅ τι δεῖ αὐτὸν ὁμόσαι καὶ δεξιὰν δοῦναι  
 καὶ θεοὺς ἐπιορκῆσαι καὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ πιστὰ ἄπιστα ποιῆσαι  
 Ἕλλησί τε καὶ βαρβάροις.» τοιαῦτα πολλὰ ἔλεγεν.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν  
 ὥς εἰς οἶκον ἀπιὼν καὶ Ὀρόντας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν· ἦγε  
 δὲ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τὴν βασιλέως ἐπὶ γάμφῳ. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ  
 ἤδη Τισσαφέρνους ἡγουμένου



δὲ ὁ ἡγησόμενος οὐδεὶς ἔσται· καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα ποιούντων  
 ἡμῶν εὐθὺς Ἀριαῖος ἀφεστήξει· ὥστε φίλος ἡμῖν οὐδεὶς  
 λελείπεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ πρόσθεν ὄντες πολέμιοι ἡμῖν  
 ἔσονται. ποταμὸς δ' εἰ μὲν τις καὶ ἄλλος ἄρα ἡμῖν  
 ἔστι |pass over, cross· οἶδα· τὸν δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην ἴσμεν ὅτι

|unable; |pass over, hinder, πολεμίων. οὐ μὲν δὴ ἂν  
 |impossible |cross |prevent  
 μάχεσθαί γε δέη, ἵππεις εἰσιν ἡμῖν ξύμμαχοι, τῶν δὲ  
 πολεμίων ἵππεις εἰσιν οἱ πλείστοι καὶ πλείστου ἄξιοι·  
 ὥστε νικῶντες μὲν τίνα ἂν ἀποκτεínaμεν; ἡττωμένων  
 δὲ οὐδένα οἶόν τε σωθῆναι. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν βασιλέα, ᾧ  
 οὕτω πολλά ἐστι τὰ σύμμαχα, |if |be eager ἡμᾶς  
 |indeed  
 ἀπολέσαι, οὐκ οἶδα ὅ τι δεῖ αὐτὸν ὁμόσαι καὶ δεξιὰν δοῦναι  
 καὶ θεοὺς |swear falsely καὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ |faith- |not trusting, ἢ οὐ  
 |ful; |trustworthy  
 |Greek τε καὶ |non-Greek .» τοιαῦτα πολλά ἔλεγεν.  
 |trust-  
 |worthy

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν  
 ὡς εἰς οἶκον ἀπιὼν καὶ Ὀρόντας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν· ἦγε  
 δὲ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τὴν βασιλέως ἐπὶ |wed- |thence δὲ  
 |ding,  
 ἦδη Τισσαφέρνους ἡγουμένου |sex

one to guide us; moreover, such action on our part will be a signal to Ariaeus to hold aloof from us, so that not a friend will be left to us; even those who were formerly our friends will now be numbered with our enemies. What other river, or rivers, we may find we have to cross, I do not know; but this we know, to cross the Euphrates in face of resistance is impossible. You see, in the event of being driven to an engagement, we have no cavalry to help us, but with the enemy it is the reverse—not only the most, but the best of his troops are cavalry, so that if we are victorious, we shall kill no one, but if we are defeated, not a man of us can escape. For my part, I cannot see why the king, who has so many advantages on his side, if he desires to destroy us, should swear oaths and tender solemn pledges merely in order to perjure himself in the sight of heaven, to render his word worthless and his credit discreditable the wide world over.” These arguments he propounded at length.

Meanwhile Tissaphernes came back, apparently ready to return home; he had his own force with him, and so had Orontas, who was also present, his. The latter brought, moreover, his bride with him, the king’s daughter, whom he had just wedded. The journey was now at length fairly commenced.

*vocabulary*

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
**ἄσφαλτος** (f) asphalt, bitumen  
**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek  
**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal  
**ἐκάστοτε** each time  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐνίστε** sometimes  
**ἐντείνω** tauten ~tend  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east wind  
**ἔχθρα** hate  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony  
**μῆκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature

**ξυλίζομαι** gather wood  
**οἰκοδομέω** build, build a house  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὀπτός** roasted  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πληγή** a hit ~plectrum  
**πλίνθος** (f) brick, block  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station ~strategy  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**ὑποψία** suspicion ~panorama  
**ὑφοράω** look at from below, suspect  
**ὑψος** ὕψους (n, 3) height, summit  
**χόρτος** barn, corral; fodder  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat) ~heir

καὶ ἀγορὰν παρέχοντος ἐπορεύοντο· ἐπορεύετο δὲ καὶ Ἀριαῖος τὸ Κύρου βαρβαρικὸν ἔχων στράτευμα ἅμα Τισσαφέρνει καὶ Ὀρόντα καὶ ξυνεστρατοπεδεύετο σὺν ἐκείνοις. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ὑφορώντες τούτους αὐτοὶ ἐφ' ἐαυτῶν ἐχώρουν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες. ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο δὲ ἐκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων παρασάγγην καὶ πλεόν· ἐφυλάττοντο δὲ ἀμφοτέρω ὥσπερ πολεμίους ἀλλήλους, καὶ εὐθύς τοῦτο ὑποψίαν παρείχεν. ἐνίστε δὲ καὶ ξυλιζόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ καὶ χόρτον καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα συλλέγοντες πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον ἀλλήλοις· ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο ἔχθραν παρείχε. διελθόντες δὲ τρεῖς σταθμοὺς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ Μηδίας καλούμενον τεῖχος, καὶ παρήλθον εἴσω αὐτοῦ. ἦν δὲ ὠκοδομημένον πλίνθοις ὀπταῖς ἐν ἀσφάλτῳ κειμέναις, εὖρος εἴκοσι ποδῶν, ὕψος δὲ ἑκατόν· μῆκος δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασάγγαι· ἀπέχει δὲ Βαβυλῶνος οὐ πολὺ.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας ὀκτώ· καὶ διέβησαν διώρυχας δύο, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ γεφύρας,

καὶ ἀγορὰν παρέχοντος ἐπορεύοντο· ἐπορεύετο δὲ καὶ  
 Ἀριαῖος τὸ Κύρου |non-Greek ἔχων |army ἅμα  
 Τισσαφέρνει καὶ Ὀρόντα καὶ ξυνεστρατοπεδεύετο σὺν  
 ἐκείνοις. οἱ δὲ |Greek |look at from οὗτους αὐτοὶ ἐφ’  
 |below, suspect  
 ἑαυτῶν |withdraw, give, |μόνας ἔχοντες. |encamp or take up  
 |way to (+dat) |station  
 δὲ |each time ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων |ca. 5 km καὶ πλέον·  
 ἐφυλάττοντο δὲ ἀμφοτέρω ὥσπερ πολεμίους ἀλλήλους,  
 καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο |suspicion παρείχεν. |sometimes· καὶ  
 |gather wood ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ καὶ |barn, καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα  
 |corral;  
 |collect, πληγὰς |tauten αὐτοῖς· ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο  
 |assemble  
 |hate παρείχε. διελθόντες δὲ τρεῖς |cottage; post· φίκοντο  
 πρὸς τὸ Μηδίας καλούμενον τείχος, καὶ παρήλθον εἴσω  
 αὐτοῦ. ἦν δὲ ὠκοδομημένον πλίνθοις |roasted ἐν |asphalt,  
 |bitumen  
 κειμέναις, |width; (caps) ποδῶν, |height,· ἑκατόν· |length, δ’  
 |the east wind |summit |stature  
 ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι |ca. 5 km ἀπέχει δὲ Βαβυλῶνος  
 οὐ πολὺ.

|thence δ’ ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post ὅσο |ca. 5 km

|eight καὶ |pass over, |ditch, canal δύο, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ |dam, dike; bridge  
 |cross

Tissaphernes led the way, and provided a market. They advanced, and Ariaeus advanced too, at the head of Cyrus's Asiatic troops, side by side with Tissaphernes and Orontas, and with these two he also pitched his camp. The Hellenes, holding them in suspicion, marched separately with the guides, and they encamped on each occasion a parasang apart, or rather less; and both parties kept watch upon each other as if they were enemies, which hardly tended to lull suspicion; and sometimes, whilst foraging for wood and grass and so forth on the same ground, blows were exchanged, which occasioned further embitterments. Three stages they had accomplished ere they reached the wall of Media, as it is called, and passed within it. It was built of baked bricks laid upon bitumen. It was twenty feet broad and a hundred feet high, and the length of it was said to be twenty parasangs. It lies at no great distance from Babylon.

From this point they marched two stages—eight parasangs—and crossed two canals, the first by a regular bridge, the other spanned

*vocabulary*

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**δασύς** hairy, brushy

**δεῖπνον** meal, food

**δεῖπνος** meal, food

**δένδρον** tree

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis

**ἐγγύς** near

**ἐλαχύς** small; comp.: less ~light

**Ἕλλην** Greek

**ἐρωτάω** ask about something

**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote

**κατατέμνω** cut up

**καταφανής** clearly seen

**μελίνη** millet

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**ὄχετός** water pipe

**παντοῖος** all kinds of

**παράδεισος** park

**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15

**περίπατος** walk, walkway

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy

**πολύανθρωπος** populous

**ποῦ** where?

**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in

**προφύλαξ** vanguard, guard officer

**σκηνέω** camp

**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)

**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters

**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph

τὴν δὲ ἐξευγμένην πλοίοις ἐπτά· αὐται δ' ἦσαν ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ· κατετέμνητο δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν καὶ τάφροι ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, αἱ μὲν πρῶται μεγάλαι, ἔπειτα δὲ ἐλάττους· τέλος δὲ καὶ μικροὶ ὀχετοί, ὥσπερ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐπὶ τὰς μελίνας· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν· πρὸς ᾧ πόλις ἦν μεγάλη καὶ πολυάνθρωπος ἥ ὄνομα Σιττάκη, ἀπέχουσα τοῦ ποταμοῦ σταδίου πεντεκαίδεκα. οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἕλληνες παρ' αὐτὴν ἐσκήνησαν ἐγγὺς παραδείσου μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ καὶ δασέος παντοίων δένδρων.

Οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι διαβεβηκότες τὸν Τίγρητα· οὐ μέντοι καταφανεῖς ἦσαν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ δειπνον ἔτυχον ἐν περιπάτῳ ὄντες πρὸ τῶν ὅπλων Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν· καὶ προσελθὼν ἄνθρωπός τις ἠρώτησε τοὺς προφύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον· Μένωνα δὲ οὐκ ἐξήτει, καὶ ταῦτα παρ' Ἀριαίου ὧν τοῦ Μένωνος ξένου. ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν ὅτι αὐτός εἰμι ὃν ζητεῖς, εἶπεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος τάδε. «Ἐπεμψέ με Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος, πιστοὶ ὄντες



τὴν δὲ |yoke, join πλοίοις ἐπτά· αὐται δ' ἦσαν ἀπὸ  
 τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ· |cut up δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν  
 καὶ |ditch ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, αἱ μὲν πρῶται μεγάλαι,  
 ἔπειτα δὲ |small τέλος δὲ καὶ μικροὶ |water pipe ὑπερ  
 ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐπὶ τὰς |millet καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ  
 τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν· πρὸς ᾧ πόλις ἦν μεγάλη καὶ  
 |populous ἡ ὄνομα Σιττάκη, |ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some  
 |distance  
 σταδίου |15 οἱ μὲν οὖν |Greek παρ' αὐτὴν  
 |camp |near |park μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ καὶ  
 |hairy, |all kinds of |tree  
 |brushy  
 Οἱ δὲ |non-Greek |pass over, cross τὸν Τίγρητα· οὐ μέντοι  
 |clearly seen ἦσαν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον ἔτυχον ἐν |walk,  
 |walkway  
 ὄντες πρὸ τῶν |tool Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν· καὶ  
 |come forward, sur- |υπὸς τις |ask τοὺς |vanguard, |where?  
 |render, come in |guard officer  
 ἃν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον· Μένωνα δὲ οὐκ ἐξήτει,  
 καὶ ταῦτα παρ' Ἀριαίου ὧν τοῦ Μένωνος ξένου. ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 Πρόξενος εἶπεν ὅτι αὐτός εἰμι ὃν ζητεῖς, εἶπεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος  
 τάδε. «Ἐπεμψέ με Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος, |faithful; |trustworthy

by a bridge of seven boats. These canals issued from the Tigris, and from them a whole system of minor trenches was cut, leading over the country, large ones to begin with, and then smaller and smaller, till at last they become the merest runnels, like those in Hellas used for watering millet fields. They reached the river Tigris. At this point there was a large and thickly populated city named Sittace, at a distance of fifteen furlongs from the river. The Hellenes accordingly encamped by the side of that city, near a large and beautiful park, which was thick with all sorts of trees.

The Asiatics had crossed the Tigris, but somehow were entirely hidden from view. After supper, Proxenus and Xenophon were walking in front of the place d'armes, when a man came up and demanded of the advanced guard where he could find Proxenus or Clearchus. He did not ask for Menon, and that too though he came from Ariaeus, who was Menon's friend. As soon as Proxenus had said: «I am he, whom you seek," the man replied: «I have been sent by Ariaeus and Artaozus, who have been trusty friends to Cyrus in past days, and are

*vocabulary*

**ἀκόλουθος** following, attending  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**διανοέω** have in mind  
**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**εὖνοος** kindly; favorable  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be

overcome; (active) defeat  
**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
**νεανίσκος** (ᾱ) young man  
**ὅποι** to which place  
**παράδεισος** park  
**πέραν** (ᾱ) on the other side, across  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**σφόδρα** very much  
**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

Κύρω καὶ ὑμῖν εὖνοι, καὶ κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι μὴ ὑμῖν ἐπιθῶνται τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ βάρβαροι· ἔστι δὲ στράτευμα πολὺ ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσω. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ πέμψαι κελεύουσι φυλακὴν, ὥς διανοεῖται αὐτὴν λῦσαι Τισσαφέρνης τῆς νυκτός, ἐὰν δύνηται, ὥς μὴ διαβῇτε ἀλλ' ἐν μέσῳ ἀποληφθῇτε τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος.»

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον καὶ φράζουσιν ἃ λέγει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας ἐταράχθη σφόδρα καὶ ἐφοβείτο. νεανίσκος δέ τις τῶν παρόντων ἐννοήσας εἶπεν ὥς οὐκ ἀκόλουθα εἴη τό τε ἐπιθήσεσθαι καὶ λύσειν τὴν γέφυραν. «δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι ἐπιτιθεμένους ἢ νικᾶν δεήσει ἢ ἡττᾶσθαι. ἐὰν μὲν οὖν νικῶσι, τί δεῖ λύειν αὐτοὺς τὴν γέφυραν; οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν πολλαὶ γέφυραι ὦσιν ἔχοιμεν ἂν ὅποι φυγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθῶμεν. ἐὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν, λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρας οὐχ ἔξουσιν ἐκεῖνοι ὅποι φύγωσιν· οὐδὲ μὴν βοηθῆσαι πολλῶν ὄντων πέραν οὐδεὶς αὐτοῖς δυνήσεται λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρας.»

Κύρω καὶ ὑμῖν |kindly; favorable| ἵ κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι μὴ ὑμῖν

ἐπιθῶνται τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ |non-Greek| ἔστι δὲ |army|

πολὺ ἐν τῷ |near| |park| . καὶ παρὰ τὴν |dam, dike; bridge|

τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ πέμψαι κελεύουσι |guard, prison, watch|, ὥς

διανοεῖται αὐτὴν λῦσαι Τισσαφέρνης τῆς |watch| νυκτός, ἐὰν

δύνηται, ὥς μὴ |pass over, cross| ἐν μέσῳ |receive, recover, take aside, cut off|

ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς |ditch, canal| .»

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον καὶ

φράζουσιν ἃ λέγει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας |mess things up|

|very much| καὶ ἐφοβείτο. |young man| δέ τις τῶν παρόντων

|consider| εἶπεν ὥς οὐκ |following, attending| εἴη τό τε ἐπιθήσεσθαι

καὶ λύσειν τὴν |dam, bridge| |dike;| |visible, conspicuous| ὅτι ἐπιτιθεμένους

ἢ νικᾶν δεήσει ἢ ἡττᾶσθαι. ἐὰν μὲν οὖν νικῶσι, τί δεῖ

λύειν αὐτοὺς τὴν |dam, dike; bridge|, ἀρ ἂν πολλαὶ |dam, dike; bridge|

ᾧσιν ἔχοιμεν ἂν |to which place| ἡμεῖς σωθῶμεν. ἐὰν

δὲ ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν, λελυμένης τῆς |dam, dike; bridge| οὐσιν

ἐκεῖνοι |to which place| οὐδὲ μὴν βοηθῆσαι πολλῶν ὄντων

|across| οὐδεὶς αὐτοῖς δυνήσεται λελυμένης τῆς |dam, dike; bridge|

your well-wishers. They warn you to be on your guard, in case the barbarians attack you in the night. There is a large body of troops in the neighbouring park. They also warn you to send and occupy the bridge over the Tigris, since Tissaphernes is minded to break it down in the night, if he can, so that you may not cross, but be caught between the river and the canal.”

On hearing this they took the man to Clearchus and acquainted him with his statement. Clearchus, on his side, was much disturbed, and indeed alarmed at the news. But a young fellow who was present, struck with an idea, suggested that the two statements were inconsistent; as to the contemplated attack and the proposed destruction of the bridge. Clearly, the attacking party must either conquer or be worsted: if they conquer, what need of their breaking down the bridge? «Why! if there were half a dozen bridges,” said he, «we should not be any the more able to save ourselves by flight—there would be no place to flee to; but, in the opposite case, suppose we win, with the bridge broken down, it is they who will not be able to save themselves by flight; and, what is worse for them, not a single soul will be able to bring them succour from the other side, for all

*vocabulary*

**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
**ἀποστροφή** turning back, away  
**ἄρnuμαι** get, win  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**γέφυρα** (ū) dam, dike; bridge  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**διαιρέω** divide, distinguish, distribute  
**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal  
**εἴτα** then, therefore, next  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἔννιμι** be in ~ion  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐνίημι** put in; motivate ~jet  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

**ἐξαγγέλλω** bring news out ~angel  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go  
 searching through  
**ἔρυμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve  
**ζεύγνυμι** (ū) yoke, join ~zygote  
**ἡώς** ἡῶθι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**ὀκνέω** shrink from, hesitate; worry  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**οὐδαμόθεν** from no place  
**πεφυλαγμένως** with due caution  
**πόσος** how many, much, far?  
**ὑποπέμπω** send to, send secretly  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery  
**ψευδής** lying, false ~pseudo-

Ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ἤρετο τὸν ἄγγελον πόση τις εἴη χώρα ἢ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι πολλή καὶ κῶμαι ἔνεισι καὶ πόλεις πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι. τότε δὴ καὶ ἐγνώσθη ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὑποπέμφειαν, ὁκνοῦντες μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν μείναιεν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἐρύματα ἔχοντες ἔνθεν μὲν τὸν Τίγρητα, ἔνθεν δὲ τὴν διώρυχα· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια ἔχοιεν ἐκ τῆς ἐν μέσῳ χώρας πολλῆς καὶ ἀγαθῆς οὔσης καὶ τῶν ἐργασομένων ἐνόντων· εἶτα δὲ καὶ ἀποστροφὴ γένοιτο εἴ τις βούλοιτο βασιλέα κακῶς ποιεῖν.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀνεπαύοντο· ἐπὶ μέντοι τὴν γέφυραν ὅμως φυλακὴν ἔπεμψαν· καὶ οὔτε ἐπέθετο οὐδεὶς οὐδαμόθεν οὔτε πρὸς τὴν γέφυραν οὐδεὶς ἦλθε τῶν πολεμίων, ὥς οἱ φυλάττοντες ἀπήγγελλον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἕως ἐγένετο, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν ἐξευγμένην πλοίοις τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτὰ ὡς οἶόν τε μάλιστα πεφυλαγμένως· ἐξήγγελλον γάρ τινες τῶν παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους Ἑλλήνων ὡς διαβαινόντων μέλλοιεν ἐπιθήσασθαι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ψευδῇ ἦν·



Ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ἤρετο τὸν ἄγγελον |how many, much,  
 |far?  
 τις εἶη χώρα ἡ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς |ditch,  
 |canal . ὁ  
 δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι πολλὴ καὶ κῶμαι ἔνεισι καὶ πόλεις πολλαὶ  
 καὶ μεγάλαι. τότε δὴ καὶ ἐγνώσθη ὅτι οἱ |non-Greek  
 τὸν ἄνθρωπον |send to, send se-|hesitate;  
 |cretly |worry μὴ οἱ |Greek  
 |divide, distinguish,|dam, dike; bridge...ν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ |protection  
 |distribute  
 ἔχοντες ἔνθεν μὲν τὸν Τίγρητα, ἔνθεν δὲ τὴν |ditch,  
 |canal  
 τὰ δ' |fit, suitable ἔχοιεν ἐκ τῆς ἐν μέσῳ χώρας πολλῆς καὶ  
 ἀγαθῆς οὔσης καὶ τῶν ἐργασομένων |be in |then, there-  
 |fore, next  
 |turning back, away...ο εἴ τις βούλοιτο βασιλέα κακῶς ποιεῖν.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα |cause to cease ἐπὶ μέντοι τὴν |dam, dike;|anyway, never-  
 |bridge |theless  
 |guard, ἔπεμψαν· καὶ οὔτε ἐπέθετο οὐδεὶς |from no place  
 |prison,  
 |watch οὔτε πρὸς τὴν |dam, dike; bridge ἦλθε τῶν πολεμίων, ὥς  
 οἱ φυλάττοντες |announce, or- ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἕως ἐγένετο,  
 |der, promise  
 |pass over, cross |dam, dike;|yoke, join πλοίοις τριάκοντα καὶ  
 |bridge  
 ἑπτὰ ὥς οἷόν τε μάλιστα |with due caution |bring news out ἵρ  
 τινες τῶν παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους |Greek ὥς |pass over, cross  
 μέλλοιεν ἐπιθήσεσθαι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν |lying, ἦν·  
 |false

their numbers, since the bridge will be broken down.”

Clarchus listened to the reasoning, and then he asked the messenger, «How large the country between the Tigris and the canal might be?” «A large district,” he replied, «and in it are villages and cities numerous and large.” Then it dawned upon them: the barbarians had sent the man with subtlety, in fear lest the Hellenes should cut the bridge and occupy the island territory, with the strong defences of the Tigris on the one side and of the canal on the other; supplying themselves with provisions from the country so included, large and rich as it was, with no lack of hands to till it; in addition to which, a harbour of refuge and asylum would be found for any one, who was minded to do the king a mischief.

After this they retired to rest in peace, not, however, neglecting to send a guard to occupy the bridge in spite of all, and there was no attack from any quarter whatsoever; nor did any of the enemy’s people approach the bridges: so the guards were able to report next morning. But as soon as it was morning, they proceeded to cross the bridge, which consisted of thirty-seven vessels, and in so doing they used the utmost precaution possible; for reports were brought by some of the Hellenes with Tissaphernes that an attempt was to be made to attack them while crossing. All this turned out to be false, though it

*vocabulary*

**ἄλλοτε** at another time ~alien  
**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon  
**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
 (intrans) ride away  
**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out  
 ~plectrum  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐπίστασις** -τος (f) stopping  
**εὐρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
 wind  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**θεωρέω** be sent to consult an oracle;

observe, contemplate  
**νόθος** bastard  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**πάμπολος** very great  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
 ca. 5 km  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square  
 ~plethora  
**σκοπάω** watch, observe  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,  
 target ~telescope  
**σοῦσον** lily  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**φύσκος** small sausage

διαβαινόντων μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς αὐτῶν ἐπεφάνη μετ' ἄλλων σκοπῶν εἰ διαβαίνοιεν τὸν ποταμόν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶδεν, ὥχετο ἀπελαύνων.

Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Φύσκον ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου· ἐπὴν δὲ γέφυρα. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ὤκειτο πόλις μεγάλη ὄνομα Ὡπιδ· πρὸς ἣν ἀπήντησε τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ὁ Κύρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου νόθος ἀδελφὸς ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ Ἐκβατάνων στρατιὰν πολλὴν ἄγων ὥς βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα παρερχομένους τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἐθεώρει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἡγείτο μὲν εἰς δύο, ἐπορεύετο δὲ ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος· ὅσον δὲ ἂν χρόνον τὸ ἡγούμενον τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐπιστήσειε, τοσοῦτον ἦν ἀνάγκη χρόνον δι' ὅλου τοῦ στρατεύματος γίνεσθαι τὴν ἐπίστασιν· ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς Ἑλλησι δόξαι πάμπολυ εἶναι, καὶ τὸν Πέρσην ἐκπεπληῆχθαι θεωροῦντα.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας σταθμοὺς

|pass over, cross μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς αὐτῶν ἐπεφάνη μετ' ἄλλων

σκοπῶν εἰ |pass over, cross ὃν ποταμόν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶδεν,

ῥῆχeto |expel, exclude, ward off;  
(intrans) ride away

Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post ἑπταρας

|ca. 5 km εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν |small ποταμόν, τὸ  
|sausage

|width; |30 me- ἐπὴν δὲ |dam, dike; bridge|there, here|inhabit  
(caps) ters or its  
the east|square  
wind |ποταμός|μεγάλη ὄνομα Ὡπις· πρὸς ἣν |encounter, come upon

|Greek ὁ Κύρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου |bastard ἰδελφὸς ἀπὸ

|lily καὶ Ἐκβατάνων στρατιὰν πολλὴν ἄγων ὥς

βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ ἑαυτοῦ |army

|pass, escape τοὺς |Greek ἐθεώρει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος

ἡγείτο μὲν εἰς δύο, ἐπορεύετο δὲ |at another time|at another time

ἐφιστάμενος· ὅσον δὲ ἂν χρόνον τὸ ἡγούμενον τοῦ

|army ἐπιστήσειε, τοσοῦτον ἦν ἀνάγκη χρόνον δι'

ἔλου τοῦ |army γίνεσθαι τὴν ἐπίστασιν· ὥστε τὸ

|army καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς |Greek δόξαι |very great εἶναι,

καὶ τὸν Πέρσιν |panic, be θεωροῦντα.  
|knocked out

|thence δ' ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας |cottage; post

is true that while crossing they did catch sight of Glus watching, with some others, to see if they crossed the river; but as soon as he had satisfied himself on that point, he rode off and was gone.

From the river Tigris they advanced four stages — twenty parasangs — to the river Physcus, which is a hundred feet broad and spanned by a bridge. Here lay a large and populous city named Opis, close to which the Hellenes were encountered by the natural brother of Cyrus and Artaxerxes, who was leading a large army from Susa and Ecbatana to assist the king. He halted his troops and watched the Hellenes march past. Clearchus led them in column two abreast: and from time to time the vanguard came to a standstill, just so often and just so long the effect repeated itself down to the hindmost man: halt! halt! halt! along the whole line: so that even to the Hellenes themselves their army seemed enormous; and the Persian was fairly astonished at the spectacle.

From this place they marched through Media six

*vocabulary*

**ἀνδράποδον** -ς slave ~androgynous  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**ἄρτος** bread, loaf  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**διάγω** lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
**διαρπάζω** make prey of ~harpoon  
**διφθέρινος** of leather  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἕξ** six ~hexagon  
**ἐπεγελάω** mock  
**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme ~volunteer  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow  
 ~trophy  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἐτοιμός** ready; fulfilled  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**εὐρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east

wind

**καινός** new, fresh, strange  
**κώμη** village  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km  
**πέραν** (ᾱ) on the other side, across  
**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square  
 ~plethora  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σταθμάομαι** judge, conclude  
**σταθμόομαι** judge, conclude  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have  
 sex ~genus  
**σχεδία** raft  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**τυρός** (ῶ) cheese  
**ὕποψία** suspicion ~panorama  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon  
**χρήζω** need ~chresard

ἐρήμους ἔξ παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς τὰς Παρυσάτιδος  
 κώμας τῆς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως μητρός. ταύτας  
 Τισσαφέρνης Κύρω ἐπεγγελῶν διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν  
 ἐπέτρεψε πλὴν ἀνδραπόδων. ἐνὴν δὲ σίτος πολὺς καὶ  
 πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα. ἐντεύθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν  
 σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι τὸν  
 Τίγρητα ποταμὸν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες. ἐν δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ  
 σταθμῷ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ πόλις ὠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ  
 εὐδαίμων ὄνομα Καιναί, ἐξ ἧς οἱ βάρβαροι διηγόν ἐπὶ  
 σχεδίαις διφθερίναις ἄρτους, τυρούς, οἶνον.

## 2.5

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμόν, τὸ  
 εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας  
 τρεῖς· ἐν δὲ ταύταις ὑποψίαι μὲν ἦσαν, φανερά δὲ οὐδεμία  
 ἐφαίνετο ἐπιβουλή. ἔδοξεν οὖν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ξυγγενέσθαι  
 τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ εἶ πως δύναίτο παῦσαι τὰς ὑποψίας  
 πρὶν ἐξ αὐτῶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι. καὶ ἔπεμψέν τινα  
 ἐροῦντα ὅτι ξυγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ χρήζει. ὁ δὲ ἐτοίμως



ἐρήμους ἔξ |ca. 5 km      τριάκοντα εἰς τὰς Παρυσάτιδος

|village τῆς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως μητρός. ταύτας

Τισσαφέρνης Κύρω ἐπεγγελῶν |make prey of οἷς |Greek

entrust, de- *πλὴν* |slave  
cide, allow

cattle, flocks, *ὃ ἄλλα χρήματα.* |thence δ' ἐπορεύθησαν  
herds

|cottage; post |*ῥήμους τέτταρας* |ca. 5 km |*εἴκοσι τὸν*

Τίγρητα ποταμὸν ἐν left-hand ἔχοντες. ἐν δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ

σταθμῶ |across τοῦ ποταμοῦ πόλις |inhabit μεγάλη καὶ

blessed with a good	new, fresh, strange	non-Greek	lead through;
genius			pass a time

|raft      |of leather      ἄρτους, |cheese      , οἶνον.

## 2.5

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμόν, τὸ

width; (caps) the	30 meters or its	there, here	μειναν ἡμέρας
east wind	square		

τρεῖς· ἐν δὲ ταύταις |suspicion, μὲν ᾗσαν, |visible, ἡ ὑδεμία  
|conspicuous

ἐφαίνεται | a plot, scheme ὅξεν οὖν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ συγγενέσθαι

τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ εἴ πως δύναιτο παῦσαι τὰς suspicion

πρὶν ἐξ αὐτῶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι. καὶ ἔπεμψέν τινα

*ἐροῦντα ὅτι συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ* |need     *ὁ δὲ* |ready;  
|fulfilled

desert stages—thirty parasangs—to the villages of Parysatis, Cyrus's and the king's mother. These Tissaphernes, in mockery of Cyrus, delivered over to the Hellenes to plunder, except that the folk in them were not to be made slaves. They contained much corn, cattle, and other property. From this place they advanced four desert stages—twenty parasangs—keeping the Tigris on the left. On the first of these stages, on the other side of the river, lay a large city; it was a well to do place named Caenae, from which the natives used to carry across loaves and cheeses and wine on rafts made of skins.

## 2.5

After this they reached the river Zapatas, which is four hundred feet broad, and here they halted three days. During the interval suspicions were rife, though no act of treachery displayed itself. Clearchus accordingly resolved to bring to an end these feelings of mistrust, before they led to war. Consequently, he sent a messenger to the Persian to say that he desired an interview

*vocabulary*

**ἄγνωμοσύνη** senselessness, ignorance, folly

**ἀνήκεστος** not to be cured, soothed, appeased

**ἀντιφυλάσσω** watch in turn

**ἀντιφυλάττω** watch in turn

**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve ~stand

**ἀπιστία** disbelief, distrust

**διαβολή** slander

**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
~heresy

**ἐξάλλομαι** break away from ~sally

**ἐπινοέω** intend

**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just

~orthogonal

**ὀρθόω** stand up

**ὄρκος** what is sworn by, witness, oath

~orc

**σαφής** clear, understandable

**σκοπάω** watch, observe

**σκοπέω** behold, consider

**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy, target ~telescope

**συνέρχομαι** come together

**συνουσία** society, sex

**ὑποψία** suspicion ~panorama

**φθάζω** do first, outstrip

**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip

ἐκέλευεν ἦκειν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ξυνήλθον, λέγει ὁ Κλέαρχος  
τάδε.

«Ἐγώ, ὦ Τισσαφέρνη, οἶδα μὲν ἡμῖν ὄρκους γεγεννημένους  
καὶ δεξιὰς δεδομένας μὴ ἀδικήσιν ἀλλήλους·  
φυλαττόμενον δὲ σέ τε ὁρῶ ὥς πολεμίους ἡμᾶς καὶ  
ἡμεῖς ὁρῶντες ταῦτα ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπῶν  
οὐ δύναμαι οὔτε σὲ αἰσθέσθαι πειρώμενον ἡμᾶς κακῶς  
ποιεῖν ἐγώ τε σαφῶς οἶδα ὅτι ἡμεῖς γε οὐδὲ ἐπινοοῦμεν  
τοιούτον οὐδέν, ἔδοξέ μοι εἰς λόγους σοι ἔλθειν, ὅπως  
εἰ δυναίμεθα ἐξέλοιμεν ἀλλήλων τὴν ἀπιστίαν. καὶ γὰρ  
οἶδα ἀνθρώπους ἤδη τοὺς μὲν ἐκ διαβολῆς τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξ  
ὑποψίας οἱ φοβηθέντες ἀλλήλους φθάσαι βυλόμενοι πρὶν  
παθεῖν ἐποίησαν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλλοντας  
οὔτ' αὖ βυλομένους τοιούτον οὐδέν. τὰς οὖν τοιαύτας  
ἀγνωμοσύνας νομίζων συνουσίαις μάλιστα παύεσθαι  
ἤκω καὶ διδάσκειν σε βούλομαι ὥς σὺ ἡμῖν οὐκ ὀρθῶς  
ἀπιστεῖς.

« Πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ καὶ μέγιστον οἱ θεῶν ἡμᾶς ὄρκοι

ἐκέλευεν ἥκειν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ |come together ἔγει ὁ Κλέαρχος  
τάδε.

«Ἐγώ, ὦ Τισσαφέρνη, οἶδα μὲν ἡμῖν |oath γεγεννημένους  
καὶ δεξιὰς δεδομένας μὴ ἀδικήσιν ἀλλήλους·  
φυλαττόμενον δὲ σέ τε ὁρῶ ὡς πολεμίους ἡμᾶς καὶ  
ἡμεῖς ὁρῶντες ταῦτα ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπῶν  
οὐ δύναμαι οὔτε σὲ αἰσθέσθαι πειρώμενον ἡμᾶς κακῶς  
ποιεῖν ἐγώ τε |clear, under-standable . ὅτι ἡμεῖς γε οὐδὲ |intend  
τοιούτον οὐδέν, ἔδοξέ μοι εἰς λόγους σοι ἔλθειν, ὅπως  
εἰ δυναίμεθα ἐξέλοιμεν ἀλλήλων τὴν |disbelief, distrust  
οἶδα ἀνθρώπους ἤδη τοὺς μὲν ἐκ |slander τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξ  
|suspicion οἱ φοβηθέντες ἀλλήλους φθάσαι βουλόμενοι πρὶν  
παθεῖν ἐποίησαν |incurable κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλλοντας  
οὔτ' αὖ βουλομένους τοιούτον οὐδέν. τὰς οὖν τοιαύτας  
|senselessness, ignorance, folly νομίζων συνουσίαις μάλιστα παύεσθαι  
ἥκω καὶ διδάσκειν σε βούλομαι ὡς σὺ ἡμῖν οὐκ ὀρθῶς  
|disbelieve

« Πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ καὶ μέγιστον οἱ θεῶν ἡμᾶς |oath

with him; to which the other readily consented. As soon as they were met, Clearchus spoke as follows:

«Tissaphernes,” he said, «I do not forget that oaths have been exchanged between us, and right hands shaken, in token that we will abstain from mutual injury; but I can see that you watch us narrowly, as if we were foes; and we, seeing this, watch you narrowly in return. But as I fail to discover, after investigation, that you are endeavouring to do us a mischief—and I am quite sure that nothing of the sort has ever entered our heads with regard to you—the best plan seemed to me to come and talk the matter over with you, so that, if possible, we might dispel the mutual distrust on either side. For I have known people ere now, the victims in some cases of calumny, or possibly of mere suspicion, who in apprehension of one another and eager to deal the first blow, have committed irreparable wrong against those who neither intended nor so much as harboured a thought of mischief against them. I have come to you under a conviction that such misunderstandings may best be put a stop to by personal intercourse, and I wish to instruct you plainly that you are wrong in mistrusting us. The first and weightiest reason is that the oaths, which

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. sin  
**ἀνθρώπινος** human  
**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce  
**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free  
**διαβατός** crossable, fordable  
**δύσπορος** hard to pass, get  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
~station  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐρημία** wilderness, solitude  
**εὐδαιμονίζω** consider happy  
**εὐεργέτης** -ου (m, 1) benefactor  
**εὐπορος** easily passed; rich  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
direct, stop ~station  
**ἐχυρός** secure; persuasive  
**κατακτείνω** kill, slay  
**κατατίθηναι** put down, deposit, lay

aside ~thesis  
**κωλύω** (ῶ) hinder, prevent  
**μαίνομαι** be berserk ~maenad  
**μεστός** full  
**ὅποι** to which place  
**ὄρκος** what is sworn by, witness, oath  
~orc  
**πάντη** everywhere  
**παραμελέω** not pay attention to  
**ποῖος** what kind  
**σκότος** darkness, shadow ~shadow  
**σύννοια** know about someone; think  
proper  
**συντίθηναι** hearken, mark ~thesis  
**τάχος** -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer  
**ὑποχος** controlled by  
**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy  
**φίλιος** friendly  
**φοβερός** frightful, afraid  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

κωλύουσι πολεμίους εἶναι ἀλλήλοις· ὅστις δὲ τούτων  
 σύνοιδεν αὐτῷ παρημεληκώς, τοῦτον ἐγὼ οὔποτ' ἂν  
 εὐδαιμονίσαιμι. τὸν γὰρ θεῶν πόλεμον οὐκ οἶδα οὔτ' ἀπὸ  
 ποίου ἂν τάχους οὔτε ὅποι ἂν τις φεύγων ἀποφύγοι—οὔτ'  
 εἰς ποῖον ἂν σκότος ἀποδραΐη οὔθ' ὅπως ἂν εἰς ἐχυρὸν  
 χωρίον ἀποσταίῃ. πάντη γὰρ πάντα τοῖς θεοῖς ὕποχα καὶ  
 πάντων ἴσον οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσι.

« Περὶ μὲν δὴ τῶν θεῶν τε καὶ τῶν ὄρκων οὕτω  
 γιγνώσκω, παρ' οὗς ἡμεῖς τὴν φιλίαν συνθέμενοι  
 κατεθέμεθα· τῶν δ' ἀνθρωπίνων σὲ ἐγὼ ἐν τῷ παρόντι  
 νομίζω μέγιστον εἶναι ἡμῖν ἀγαθόν. σὺν μὲν γὰρ σοὶ  
 πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς εὐπορος, πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς διαβατός, τῶν  
 τε ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ ἀπορία· ἄνευ δὲ σοῦ πᾶσα μὲν διὰ  
 σκότους ἢ ὁδός· οὐδὲν γὰρ αὐτῆς ἐπιστάμεθα· πᾶς δὲ  
 ποταμὸς δύσπορος, πᾶς δὲ ὄχλος φοβερός, φοβερώτατον  
 δ' ἐρημία· μεστὴ γὰρ πολλῆς ἀπορίας ἐστίν. εἰ δὲ δὴ καὶ  
 μανέντες σε κατακτεínaμεν, ἄλλο τι ἂν ἢ τὸν εὐεργέτην  
 κατακτείναντες πρὸς βασιλέα τὸν μέγιστον



κωλύουσι πολεμίους εἶναι ἀλλήλοις· ὅστις δὲ τούτων

|know about 'some-not pay attention to ὅτον ἐγὼ οὐποτ' ἂν  
|one; think proper

|consider happy τὸν γὰρ θεῶν πόλεμον οὐκ οἶδα οὐτ' ἀπὸ

ποίου ἂν |speed οὔτε |to which place, εὐγυν |avoid, escape, ὅτ'  
|go free

εἰς πόλον ἂν |darkness |escape οὐθ' ὅπως ἂν εἰς |secure;  
|persuasive

χωρίον ἀποσταίη. |everywhere, πάντα τοῖς θεοῖς |controlled by

πάντων ἴσον οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσι.

« Περὶ μὲν δὴ τῶν θεῶν τε καὶ τῶν ὄρκων οὕτω

γιγνώσκω, παρ' οὓς ἡμεῖς τὴν φιλίαν |hearken, mark

|put down τῶν δ' |human σὲ ἐγὼ ἐν τῷ παρόντι

νομίζω μέγιστον εἶναι ἡμῖν ἀγαθόν. σὺν μὲν γὰρ σοὶ

πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς |easily , πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς |crossable, , τῶν  
|passed;  
|fordable

τε |fit, suitable οὐκ |rich |difficulty, |away from; not hav- ι μὲν διὰ  
|bottleneck |ing; not needing

|darkness ἡ ὁδός· οὐδὲν γὰρ αὐτῆς ἐπιστάμεθα· πᾶς δὲ

ποταμὸς |hard to pass, get δὲ ὄχλος |frightful, , |frightful, afraid  
|afraid

δ' |wilderness, full γὰρ πολλῆς |difficulty, 'στίν. εἰ δὲ δὴ καὶ  
|solitude |bottleneck

|be berserk τε |kill, slay , ἄλλο τι ἂν ἢ τὸν |benefactor

|kill, slay πρὸς βασιλέα τὸν μέγιστον

we took in the sight of heaven, are a barrier to mutual hostility. I envy not the man whose conscience tells him that he has disregarded these! For in a war with heaven, by what swiftness of foot can a man escape?—in what quarter find refuge?—in what darkness slink away and be hid?—to what strong fortress scale and be out of reach? Are not all things in all ways subject to the gods? is not their lordship over all alike outspread? As touching the gods, therefore, and our oaths, that is how I view this matter. To their safe keeping we consigned the friendship which we solemnly contracted. But turning to matters human, you I look upon as our greatest blessing in this present time. With you every path is plain to us, every river passable, and of provisions we shall know no stint. But without you, all our way is through darkness; for we know nothing concerning it, every river will be an obstacle, each multitude a terror; but, worst terror of all, the vast wilderness, so full of endless perplexity. Nay, if in a fit of madness we murdered you, what then? in slaying our benefactor should we not have challenged to enter the lists against us a more

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**ἐνοχλέω** be annoyed**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὅ) wish, covet**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**ἔφεδρος** sitting at**θυμώ** (ὅ) anger**κολάζω** punish**λυπηρός** (ὅ) painful, causing pain, sad**μαίνομαι** be berserk ~maenad**ποῖος** what kind**σαντοῦ** yourself**στερέω** steal, take**ταπεινός** low**ὕμέτερος** (ὅ) yours

ἔφεδρον ἀγωνιζοίμεθα; ὅσων δὲ δὴ καὶ οἷων ἂν ἐλπίδων  
ἐμαυτὸν στερήσαιμι, εἰ σέ τι κακὸν ἐπιχειρήσαιμι ποιεῖν,  
ταῦτα λέξω.

«Ἐγὼ γὰρ Κῦρον ἐπεθύμησά μοι φίλον γενέσθαι, νομίζων  
τῶν τότε ἱκανώτατον εἶναι εὖ ποιεῖν ὃν βούλοιτο· σέ δὲ  
νῦν ὁρῶ τήν τε Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ χώραν ἔχοντα καὶ  
τὴν σαυτοῦ χώραν σῶζοντα, τὴν δὲ βασιλέως δύναμιν,  
ἣ Κῦρος πολεμιά ἐχρήτο, σοὶ ταύτην ξύμμαχον οὖσαν.  
τούτων δὲ τοιούτων ὄντων τίς οὕτω μαίνεται ὅστις οὐ  
βούλεται σοὶ φίλος εἶναι; ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐρῶ γὰρ καὶ ταῦτα ἐξ  
ὧν ἔχω ἐλπίδας καὶ σέ βουλήσεσθαι φίλον ἡμῖν εἶναι.

« Οἶδα μὲν γὰρ ὑμῖν Μυσοὺς λυπηροὺς ὄντας, οὓς νομίζω  
ἂν σὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν παρασχεῖν·  
οἶδα δὲ καὶ Πισίδας· ἀκούω δὲ καὶ ἄλλα ἔθνη πολλὰ  
τοιαῦτα εἶναι, ἃ οἶμαι ἂν παῦσαι ἐνοχλοῦντα ἀεὶ τῇ  
ὑμετέρᾳ εὐδαιμονίᾳ. Αἰγυπτίους δέ, οἷς μάλιστα ὑμᾶς  
γιγνώσκω τεθυμωμένους, οὐχ ὁρῶ ποῖα δυνάμει συμμάχῳ  
χρησάμενοι μᾶλλον ἂν κολάσαισθε τῆς νῦν σὺν ἐμοὶ οὔσης.

|sitting at |contend, exert, ὅσων δὲ δὴ καὶ οἷων ἂν ἐλπίδων  
|oneself  
ἐμαντὸν |steal, take , εἰ σέ τι κακὸν |do, try, attack ποιεῖν,  
ταῦτα λέξω.

«Ἐγὼ γὰρ Κῦρον |wish, covet μοι φίλον γενέσθαι, νομίζων  
τῶν τότε ἱκανώτατον εἶναι εὖ ποιεῖν ὃν βούλοιο· σὲ δὲ  
νῦν ὁρῶ τήν τε Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ χώραν ἔχοντα καὶ  
τὴν |yourself χώραν σώζοντα, τὴν δὲ βασιλέως δύναμιν,  
ἣ Κῦρος πολεμία ἐχρήτο, σοὶ ταύτην ξύμμαχον οὖσαν.  
τούτων δὲ τοιούτων ὄντων τίς οὕτω |be berserk ἵστις οὐ  
βούλεται σοὶ φίλος εἶναι; ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐρῶ γὰρ καὶ ταῦτα ἐξ  
ὧν ἔχω ἐλπίδας καὶ σὲ βουλήσεσθαι φίλον ἡμῖν εἶναι.

« Οἶδα μὲν γὰρ ὑμῖν Μυσοὺς |painful, caus- τας, οὓς νομίζω  
|ing pain, sad  
ἂν σὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει |low ὑμῖν παρασχεῖν·  
οἶδα δὲ καὶ Πισίδας· ἀκούω δὲ καὶ ἄλλα ἔθνη πολλὰ  
τοιαῦτα εἶναι, ἃ οἶμαι ἂν παῦσαι |be annoyed ἀεὶ τῇ  
|yours εὐδαιμονία. Αἰγυπτίους δέ, οἷς μάλιστα ὑμᾶς  
γιγνώσκω |anger , οὐχ ὁρῶ |what kind 'μει συμμαχῶ  
χρησάμενοι μάλλον ἂν |punish τῆς νῦν σὺν ἐμοὶ οὔσης.

formidable antagonist in the king himself? Let me tell you, how many high hopes I should rob myself of, were I to take in hand to do you mischief.

«I Coveted the friendship of Cyrus; I believed him to be abler than any man of his day to benefit those whom he chose; but to-day I look and, behold, it is you who are in his place; the power which belonged to Cyrus and his territory are yours now. You have them, and your own satrapy besides, safe and sound; while the king's power, which was a thorn in the side of Cyrus, is your support. This being so, it would be madness not to wish to be your friend. But I will go further and state to you the reasons of my confidence, that you on your side will desire our friendship.

«I Know that the Mysians are a cause of trouble to you, and I flatter myself that with my present force I could render them humbly obedient to you. This applies to the Pisidians also; and I am told there are many other such tribes besides. I think I can deal with them all; they shall cease from being a constant disturbance to your peace and prosperity. Then there are the Egyptians. I know your anger against them to-day is very great. Nor can I see what better force you will find to help you in chastising them than this which marches at my back

*vocabulary*

**ἀναστρέφω** act: overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy  
**ἀντακούω** hear in turn  
**ἀντιπάσχω** be affected in return for  
**ἀπαμείβομαι** answer ~amoeba  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve ~stand  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**βλάπτω** break, make fail  
**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot  
**ἐνθυμέομαι** (ὑ) take to heart  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
 ~volunteer  
**ἡδέως** pleasantly ~hedonism  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable  
**κακόννοος** ill-disposed  
**λυπέω** (ὑ) annoy, distress  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**ὅπλισις** -τος (f) arming for war  
**πέριξ** all around  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**σαυτοῦ** yourself  
**ὑπηρετέω** serve  
**ὑπηρέτης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer  
**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἀλλὰ μὴν ἔν γε τοῖς πέριξ οἰκοῦσι σὺ εἰ μὲν βούλοιο φίλος ὡς μέγιστος ἂν εἴης, εἰ δέ τίς σε λυποίη, ὡς δεσπότης ἂν ἀναστρέφοιο ἔχων ἡμᾶς ὑπηρέτας, οἳ σοι οὐκ ἂν μισθοῦ ἔνεκα ὑπηρετοῖμεν ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος ἣν σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ σοὶ ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. ἐμοὶ μὲν ταῦτα πάντα ἐνθυμουμένῳ οὕτω δοκεῖ θαυμαστὸν εἶναι τὸ σὲ ἡμῖν ἀπιστεῖν ὥστε καὶ ἥδιστ' ἂν ἀκούσαιο τὸ ὄνομα τίς οὕτως ἐστὶ δεινὸς λέγειν ὥστε σε πείσαι λέγων ὡς ἡμεῖς σοι ἐπιβουλεύομεν.» Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν τοσαῦτα εἶπε· Τισσαφέρνης δὲ ὧδε ἀπημείφθη.

«Ἄλλ' ἥδομαι μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀκούων σου φρονίμους λόγους· ταῦτα γὰρ γινώσκων εἴ τι ἐμοὶ κακὸν βουλεύεις, ἅμα ἂν μοι δοκεῖς καὶ σαντῶ κακόνους εἶναι. ὡς δ' ἂν μάθης ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ὑμεῖς δικαίως οὔτε βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐμοὶ ἀπιστοίητε, ἀντάκουσον. εἰ γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπολέσαι, πότερά σοι δοκοῦμεν ἱππέων πλήθους ἀπορεῖν ἢ πεζῶν ἢ ὀπλίσεως ἐν ἧ ὑμᾶς μὲν βλάπτειν ἱκανοὶ εἴημεν ἂν, ἀντιπάσχειν δὲ οὐδεὶς κίνδυνος; ἀλλὰ χωρίων



ἀλλὰ μὴν ἔν γε τοῖς |all |inhabit σὺ εἰ μὲν βούλοιο  
|around

φίλος ὡς μέγιστος ἂν εἴης, εἰ δέ τίς σε |annoy, , ὡς  
|distress

|master, ἂν |act: overturn; mīd: ν ἡμᾶς |servant, , οἱ σοι  
|despot |find oneself in |officer

οὐκ ἂν |reward, ἔνεκα |serve ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος  
|wages

ἦν σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ σοὶ ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. ἐμοὶ μὲν

ταῦτα πάντα |take to heart οὕτω δοκεῖ |wonderful; εἶναι τὸ  
|admirable

σέ ἡμῖν |disbelieve ὥστε καὶ ἥδιστ' ἂν ἀκούσαιμι τὸ ὄνομα

τίς οὕτως ἐστὶ δεινὸς λέγειν ὥστε σε πείσαι λέγων ὡς

ἡμεῖς σοι |plot, plan, harm .» Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν τοσαῦτα

εἶπε· Τισσαφέρνης δὲ ᾧδε |answer .

«Ἄλλ' |ἥδομαι?: ,bē pleased, enjoy; or ἀκούων σου |sensible,  
|ἥδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy |prudent

λόγους· ταῦτα γὰρ γινώσκων εἴ τι ἐμοὶ κακὸν βουλευοίς,

ἅμα ἂν μοι δοκεῖς καὶ |yourself |ill-disposed εἶναι. ὡς δ'

ἂν μάθης ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ὑμεῖς δικαίως οὔτε βασιλεῖ οὔτ'

ἐμοὶ |disbelieve , |hear in turn . εἰ γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐβουλόμεθα

ἀπολέσαι, |which, . ι δοκοῦμεν ἱππέων πλήθους |be confused,  
|whichever |distressed

ἢ πεζῶν ἢ |arming for war, ὃ ὑμᾶς μὲν |break, make fail ἰ εἶημεν

ἂν, |be affected in δὲ οὐδεὶς κίνδυνος; ἀλλὰ |area; downwards  
|return for

to-day. Again, if you seek the friendship of any of your neighbours round, there shall be no friend so great as you; if any one annoys you, with us as your faithful servitors you shall belord it over him; and such service we will render you, not as hirelings merely for pay's sake, but for the gratitude which we shall rightly feel to you, to whom we owe our lives. As I dwell on these matters, I confess, the idea of your feeling mistrust of us is so astonishing, that I would give much to discover the name of the man, who is so clever of speech that he can persuade you that we harbour designs against you." Clearchus ended, and Tissaphernes responded thus—"I Am glad, Clearchus, to listen to your sensible remarks; for with the sentiments you hold, if you were to devise any mischief against me, it could only be out of malevolence to yourself. But if you imagine that you, on your side, have any better reason to mistrust the king and me, than we you, listen to me in turn, and I will undeceive you. I ask you, does it seem to you that we lack the means, if we had the will, to destroy you? have we not horsemen enough, or infantry, or whatever other arm you like, whereby we may be able to injure you, without risk of suffering in return? or, possibly, do we seem

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχροῦς** shameful

**ἀμήχανος** helpless, impossible

~mechanism

**ἀντιτάσσω** set against

**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed

**ἄπορος** impassable, difficult

**ἀσεβής** profane

**διαπορεύω** carry over, through

**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

**ἐξάλλομαι** break away from ~sally

**ἔξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion

**ἐπικίνδυνος** (ὄ) in danger, dangerous

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat

**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic

**κρείσσων** more powerful; better

**λιμός** (ι, f) famine

**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how great

**παντάπασι** altogether; yes, certainly

**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia

**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare

**προκαταλαμβάνω** seize beforehand

~epilepsy

**ταμιεύω** manage, dispense, husband

**φίλιος** friendly

ἐπιτηδείων ὑμῖν ἐπιτίθεσθαι ἀπορεῖν ἄν σοι δοκοῦμεν;  
οὐ τοσαῦτα μὲν πεδία ἃ ὑμεῖς φίλια ὄντα σὺν πολλῶ  
πόνῳ διαπορεύεσθε, τοσαῦτα δὲ ὄρη ὀράτε ὑμῖν ὄντα  
πορευτέα, ἃ ἡμῖν ἔξεστι προκαταλαβοῦσιν ἄπορα ὑμῖν  
παρέχειν, τοσοῦτοι δ' εἰσὶ ποταμοὶ ἐφ' ὧν ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν  
ταμιεύεσθαι ὅπόσοις ἂν ὑμῶν βουλώμεθα μάχεσθαι; εἰσὶ  
δ' αὐτῶν οὓς οὐδ' ἂν παντάπασι διαβαίητε, εἰ μὴ ἡμεῖς  
ὑμᾶς διαπορεύοιμεν.

«Εἰ δ' ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις ἡττήμεθα, ἀλλὰ τό γέ τοι  
πῦρ κρεῖττον τοῦ καρποῦ ἐστίν· ὃν ἡμεῖς δυναίμεθ' ἂν  
κατακαύσαντες λιμὸν ὑμῖν ἀντιτάξαι, ὧ ὑμεῖς οὐδ' εἰ πάννυ  
ἀγαθοὶ εἴητε μάχεσθαι ἂν δύναισθε. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἔχοντες  
τοσοῦτους πόρους πρὸς τὸ ὑμῖν πολεμεῖν, καὶ τούτων  
μηδὲνα ἡμῖν ἐπικίνδυνον, ἔπειτα ἐκ τούτων πάντων  
τοῦτον ἂν τὸν τρόπον ἐξελοίμεθα ὃς μόνος μὲν πρὸς θεῶν  
ἀσεβής, μόνος δὲ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων αἰσχρός; παντάπασι δὲ  
ἀπόρων ἐστὶ καὶ ἀμηχάνων καὶ ἐν ἀνάγκῃ ἐχομένων, καὶ  
τούτων πονηρῶν, οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι δι' ἐπιπορκίας τε

|fit, suitable ὑμῖν ἐπιτίθεσθαι |be confused, σοι δοκοῦμεν;  
|distressed  
οὐ τοσαῦτα μὲν πεδία ἃ ὑμεῖς |friendly-ντα σὺν πολλῶ  
|toil, suffering -ρεύεσθε, τοσαῦτα δὲ ὄρη ὁράτε ὑμῖν ὄντα  
πορευτέα, ἃ ἡμῖν ἔξεστι |seize beforehand |impassable, ἵν  
|difficult  
παρέχειν, τοσοῦτοι δ' εἰσὶ ποταμοὶ ἐφ' ὧν ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν  
|manage, |as/how many/great βουλόμεθα μάχεσθαι; εἰσὶ  
|dispense,  
|husband οὗς οὐδ' ἂν |altogether; διαβαίητε, εἰ μὴ ἡμεῖς  
|yes, certainly  
ὑμᾶς |carry over, through

«Εἰ δ' ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις |(pass) be weaker, be over- γέ τοι  
|come; (active) defeat  
πῦρ κρεῖττον τοῦ καρποῦ ἐστίν· ὃν ἡμεῖς δυναίμεθ' ἂν  
|burn down |famine ἡμῖν |set against , ὧ ὑμεῖς οὐδ' εἰ πάνν  
ἀγαθοὶ εἴητε μάχεσθαι ἂν δύναισθε. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἔχοντες  
τοσοῦτους |way, bridge, ὃς τὸ ὑμῖν πολεμεῖν, καὶ τούτων  
μηδένα ἡμῖν |in danger, dangerous . ι ἐκ τούτων πάντων  
τούτον ἂν τὸν τρόπον ἐξελοίμεθα ὃς μόνος μὲν πρὸς θεῶν  
|profane , μόνος δὲ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων |shameful , |altogether; δὲ  
|yes, certainly  
|impassable, τὶ καὶ |helpless, καὶ ἐν ἀνάγκῃ ἐχομένων, καὶ  
|difficult |impossible  
τούτων πονηρῶν, οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι δι' ἐπιρκίας τε

to you to lack the physical surroundings suitable for attacking you? Do you not see all these great plains, which you find it hard enough to traverse even when they are friendly? and all yonder great mountain chains left for you to cross, which we can at any time occupy in advance and render impassable? and all those rivers, on whose banks we can deal craftily by you, checking and controlling and choosing the right number of you whom we care to fight! Nay, there are some which you will not be able to cross at all, unless we transport you to the other side.

«And if at all these points we were worsted, yet ‘fire,’ as they say, ‘is stronger than the fruit of the field’: we can burn it down and call up famine in arms against you; against which you, for all your bravery, will never be able to contend. Why then, with all these avenues of attack, this machinery of war, open to us, not one of which can be turned against ourselves, why should we select from among them all that method, which alone in the sight of God is impious and of man abominable? Surely it belongs to people altogether without resources, who are helplessly struggling in the toils of fate, and are villains to boot, to seek accomplishment of

*vocabulary*

**αἵτιος** blameworthy; the cause  
 ~etiology  
**ἀλόγιστος** inconsiderate, irrational  
**ἀπιστία** disbelief, distrust  
**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
 ~ballistic  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἔρως** -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic  
**ἔσχατος** farthest, last  
**εὐεργεσία** good deed, public service  
 ~ergonomics

**εὐπέτης** flying well  
**ἡλίθιος** idle, vain, foolish  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent  
**μισθοδοσία** payment of wages  
**ξενικός** strange, foreign  
**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just  
 ~orthogonal  
**οὐχοῦν** not so?; and so  
**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy  
**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy  
**φίλιος** friendly  
**χρήσιμος** useful

πρὸς θεοὺς καὶ ἀπιστίας πρὸς ἀνθρώπους πράττειν τι. οὐχ οὕτως ἡμεῖς, ὦ Κλέαρχε, οὔτε ἀλόγιστοι οὔτε ἡλίθιοί ἐσμεν.

«Ἀλλὰ τί δὴ ὑμᾶς ἐξὸν ἀπολέσαι οὐκ ἐπὶ τοῦτο ἤλθομεν; εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι ὁ ἐμὸς ἔρως τούτου αἴτιος τὸ τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἐμὲ πιστὸν γενέσθαι, καὶ ὦ Κῦρος ἀνέβη ξενικῶ διὰ μισθοδοσίας πιστεύων τούτῳ ἐμὲ καταβῆναι δι' εὐεργεσίαν ἰσχυρόν. ὅσα δ' ἐμοὶ χρήσιμοι ὑμεῖς ἐστε τὰ μὲν καὶ σὺ εἶπας, τὸ δὲ μέγιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· τὴν μὲν γὰρ ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τιάραν βασιλεῖ μόνῳ ἔξεστιν ὀρθὴν ἔχειν, τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ ἴσως ἂν ὑμῶν παρόντων καὶ ἕτερος εὐπετώσ ἔχοι.»

Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἀληθῆ λέγειν· καὶ εἶπεν· «Οὐκοῦν,» ἔφη, «οἷτινες τοιούτων ἡμῖν εἰς φιλίαν ὑπαρχόντων πειρῶνται διαβάλλοντες ποιῆσαι πολεμίους ἡμᾶς ἄξιοί εἰσι τὰ ἔσχατα παθεῖν;»

«Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν γε,» ἔφη ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, «εἰ βούλεσθέ μοι



πρὸς θεοὺς καὶ |disbelief, πρὸς ἀνθρώπους πράττειν τι.  
|distrust  
οὐχ οὕτως ἡμεῖς, ὦ Κλέαρχε, οὔτε |inconsiderate, irra-|idle, vain, foolish  
|tional  
ἐσμεν.

«Ἀλλὰ τί δὴ ὑμᾶς |go forth; |λέσαι οὐκ ἐπὶ τοῦτο  
|is possible  
ἤλθομεν; εἰ ἴσθι ὅτι ὁ ἐμὸς |love, τούτου |blameworthy;  
|desire |the cause  
τοῖς |Greek ἐμὲ |faithful; , .. ἐσθαι, καὶ ὦ Κῦρος ἀνέβη  
|trustworthy  
|strange, διὰ |payment of wages - τεύων τούτῳ ἐμὲ καταβῆναι  
|foreign  
δι' |good deed, |strong, forc- |δ' ἐμοὶ |useful ὑμεῖς ἐστε τὰ  
|public service |ful, violent  
μὲν καὶ σὺ εἶπας, τὸ δὲ μέγιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· τὴν μὲν γὰρ  
ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τιάραν βασιλεῖ μόνῳ ἔξεστιν |upright, -straight; correct,  
|just  
τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ ἴσως ἂν ὑμῶν παρόντων καὶ ἕτερος  
|flying well -χοι.»

Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἀληθῆ λέγειν· καὶ  
εἶπεν· «|not so?; and ὅ, «οἷτινες τοιούτων ἡμῖν εἰς φιλίαν  
ὑπαρχόντων πειρῶνται |throw across; ποιῆσαι πολεμίους  
|slander  
ἡμᾶς ἄξιοί εἰσι τὰ |farthest παθεῖν;»

«Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν γε,» ἔφη ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, «εἰ βούλεσθέ μοι

their desires by perjury to heaven and faithlessness to their fellows. We are not so unreasoning, Clearchus, nor so foolish.

«Why, when we had it in our power to destroy you, did we not proceed to do it? Know well that the cause of this was nothing less than my passion to prove myself faithful to the Hellenes, and that, as Cyrus went up, relying on a foreign force attracted by payment, I in turn might go down strong in the same through service rendered. Various ways in which you Hellenes may be useful to me you yourself have mentioned, but there is one still greater. It is the great king's privilege alone to wear the tiara upright upon his head, yet in your presence it may be given to another mortal to wear it upright, here, upon his heart.”

Throughout this speech he seemed to Clearchus to be speaking the truth, and he rejoined: «Then are not those worthy of the worst penalties who, in spite of all that exists to cement our friendship, endeavour by slander to make us enemies?”

«Even so,”

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
 ~ballistic  
**διάκειμαι** be in a condition  
**διακέομαι** repair  
**ἐλέγχω** shame; try, examine  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἐμφαίνω** display in  
**ἐμφανής** visible  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
 ~volunteer  
**κακόνους** ill-disposed

**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**ὅθεν** whence  
**προδότης** -ου (m, 1) traitor, abandoner  
**στασιάζω** revolt, be divided  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have sex ~genus  
**σύνδειπνον** common meal or banquet  
**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked  
**ὑποπτεύω** guess, observe, be suspicious of  
**ὑστεραίῳς** the next; later  
**φιλικός** friendly  
**φιλοφρονέομαι** treat kindly, favor

οἳ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐλθεῖν, ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ λέξω  
τοὺς πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγοντας ὥς σὺ ἐμοὶ ἐπιβουλεύεις καὶ τῇ σὺν  
ἐμοὶ στρατιᾷ.»

«Ἐγὼ δέ,» ἔφη ὁ Κλέαρχος, «ἄξω πάντας, καὶ σοὶ  
αὖ δηλώσω ὅθεν ἐγὼ περὶ σοῦ ἀκούω.» ἐκ τούτων  
δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσαφέρνης φιλοφρονούμενος τότε  
μὲν μένειν τε αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε καὶ σύνδειπνον ἐποιήσατο.  
τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον  
δηλὸς τ' ἦν πάνυ φιλικῶς οἰόμενος διακειῖσθαι τῷ  
Τισσαφέρνει καὶ ἃ ἔλεγεν ἐκείνος ἀπήγγελλεν, ἔφη τε  
χρῆναι ἰέναι παρὰ Τισσαφέρνην οὓς ἐκέλευεν, καὶ οἳ ἂν  
ἐλεγχθῶσι διαβάλλοντες τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὥς προδότας  
αὐτοὺς καὶ κακόνους τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ὄντας τιμωρηθῆναι.  
ὕπώπτευε δὲ εἶναι τὸν διαβάλλοντα Μένωνα, εἰδὼς  
αὐτὸν καὶ συγγεγεννημένον Τισσαφέρνει μετ' Ἀριαίου  
καὶ στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιβουλεύοντα, ὅπως τὸ  
στράτευμα ἅπαν πρὸς αὐτὸν λαβὼν φίλος ἦ Τισσαφέρνει.  
ἐβούλετο δὲ καὶ Κλέαρχος ἅπαν τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς

οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ |captain ἔλθειν, ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ λέξω  
τοὺς πρὸς ἐμέ λέγοντας ὥς σὺ ἐμοὶ |plot, plan, harm... ἡ τῇ σὺν  
ἐμοὶ |army »

«Ἐγὼ δέ,» ἔφη ὁ Κλέαρχος, «ἄξω πάντας, καὶ σοὶ  
αὖ |show, |whence, ὅ περὶ σοῦ ἀκούω.» ἐκ τούτων  
δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσαφέρνης |treat kindly, favor τότε  
μὲν μένειν τε αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε καὶ σύνδειπνον ἐποιήσατο.

τῇ δὲ |the next; later Ἰλέαρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον  
|visible, ὅ ἦν πάντῃ |friendly οἰόμενος διακεῖσθαι τῷ  
|conspicuous  
Τισσαφέρνει καὶ ἃ ἔλεγεν ἐκεῖνος |announce, or- ἔφη τε  
|der, promise  
χρῆναι ἵεναι παρὰ Τισσαφέρνην οὓς ἐκέλευεν, καὶ οἱ ἂν

|shame; try, |throw across; τῶν |Greek, ὥς |traitor,  
|examine |slander  
αὐτοὺς καὶ |ill-disposed τοῖς |Greek ὄντας |take vengeance,  
|punish, aid

|guess, observe, εἶναι τὸν |throw across; Μένωνα, εἰδὼς  
|be suspicious of |slander  
αὐτὸν καὶ |associate with, Τισσαφέρνει μετ' Ἀριαίου  
|meet, have sex

καὶ |revolt, be divided ἡτῶ καὶ |plot, plan, harm, ὅπως τὸ  
|army ἅπαν πρὸς αὐτὸν λαβὼν φίλος ἦ Τισσαφέρνει.

ἐβούλετο δὲ καὶ Κλέαρχος ἅπαν τὸ |army πρὸς

replied Tissaphernes, «and if your generals and captains care to come in some open and public way, I will name to you those who tell me that you are plotting against me and the army under me.” «Good,” replied Clearchus. «I will bring all, and I will show you, on my side, the source from which I derive my information concerning you.”

After this conversation Tissaphernes, with kindest expression, invited Clearchus to remain with him at the time, and entertained him at dinner. Next day Clearchus returned to the camp, and made no secret of his persuasion that he at any rate stood high in the affections of Tissaphernes, and he reported what he had said, insisting that those invited ought to go to Tissaphernes, and that any Hellene convicted of calumnious language ought to be punished, not only as traitors themselves, but as disaffected to their fellow-countrymen. The slanderer and traducer was Menon; so, at any rate, he suspected, because he knew that he had had meetings with Tissaphernes whilst he was with Ariaeus, and was factiously opposed to himself, plotting how to win over the whole army to him, as a means of winning the good graces of Tissaphernes. But Clearchus wanted the entire army to give its mind

*vocabulary*

**ἀντιλέγω** contradict, oppose

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric

**διακόσιοι** (ἄ) two hundred

**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

~practice

**ἐκποδών** out of the way

**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved

**Ἕλληγ** Greek

**ἐνδον** in the house of; within

**ἵππασία** horse riding

**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent

**κατακόπτω** cut down, shatter

**κατατείνω** stretch out

**λοχαγός** (ἄ) captain

**παραλυπέω** (ῥ) trouble as well

**σημεῖον** sign

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

**συνακολουθέω** follow with, be related

**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief

~trauma

ἐαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην καὶ τοὺς παραλυποῦντας ἐκποδὼν εἶναι. τῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν ἀντέλεγόν τινες αὐτῷ μὴ ἰέναι πάντας τοὺς λοχαγοὺς καὶ στρατηγούς μὴδὲ πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰσχυρῶς κατέτεινεν, ἔστε διεπράξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγούς ἰέναι, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχαγούς· συνηκολούθησαν δὲ ὡς εἰς ἀγορὰν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὡς διακόσιοι.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ θύραις ταῖς Τισσαφέρνους, οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ παρεκλήθησαν εἴσω, Πρόξενος Βοιώτιος, Μένων Θετταλός, Ἀγίας Ἀρκάς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σωκράτης Ἀχαιοῦ· οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ἔμενον. οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου οἳ τ' ἔνδον ξυνελαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεκόπησαν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τῶν βαρβάρων τινὲς ἰππέων διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐλαύνοντες ᾧτινι ἐντυγχάνοιεν Ἕλληνι ἢ δούλῳ ἢ ἐλευθέρῳ πάντας ἔκτεινον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες τὴν τε ἰππασίαν ἐθαύμαζον ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὀρῶντες καὶ ὅ τι ἐποιοῦν ἡμφεγνόουν, πρὶν Νίκαρχος Ἀρκὰς ἦκε φεύγων τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα



ἑαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην καὶ τοὺς |trouble as well

|out of the way .ι. τῶν δὲ |soldier, |contradict, τινες  
|mercenary |oppose

αὐτῷ μὴ ἶναι πάντας τοὺς |captain καὶ στρατηγούς

μηδὲ πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος |strong, force-  
|ful, violent

|stretch out , ἔστε |travel over, πέντε μὲν στρατηγούς ἶναι,  
|accomplish

εἴκοσι δὲ |captain |follow with, be re- δὲ ὡς εἰς ἀγορὰν καὶ  
|lated

τῶν ἄλλων |soldier, ὡς |two hundred  
|mercenary

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ θύραις ταῖς Τισσαφέρνους, οἱ μὲν

στρατηγοὶ παρεκλήθησαν εἴσω, Πρόξενος Βοιώτιος,

Μένων Θετταλός, Ἀγίας Ἀρκάς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων,

Σωκράτης Ἀχαιός· οἱ δὲ |captain ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ἔμενον.

οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου οἷ τ' |in the house of;  
|within

ξυνελαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω |cut down, shatter , ἐτὰ δὲ ταῦτα

τῶν |non-Greek τινὲς ἰππέων διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐλαύνοντες

ᾧτινι ἐντυγχάνοιεν |Greek ἢ δούλῳ ἢ |not enslaved. ἄντας

ἔκτεινον. οἱ δὲ |Greek τὴν τε |horse  
|riding

στρατοπέδου ὀρώντες καὶ ὅ τι ἐποιοῦν ἡμφεγνόουν, πρὶν

Νίκαρχος Ἀρκὰς ἦκε φεύγων |wound, bring εἰς τὴν |belly  
|to grief

to no one else, and that refractory people should be put out of the way. Some of the soldiers protested: the captains and generals had better not all go; it was better not to put too much confidence in Tissaphernes. But Clearchus insisted so strongly that finally it was arranged for five generals to go and twenty captains. These were accompanied by about two hundred of the other soldiers, who took the opportunity of marketing.

On arrival at the doors of Tissaphernes's quarters the generals were summoned inside. They were Proxenus the Boeotian, Menon the Thessalian, Agias the Arcadian, Clearchus the Laconian, and Socrates the Achaean; while the captains remained at the doors. Not long after that, at one and the same signal, those within were seized and those without cut down; after which some of the barbarian horsemen galloped over the plain, killing every Hellene they encountered, bond or free. The Hellenes, as they looked from the camp, viewed that strange horsemanship with surprise, and could not explain to themselves what it all meant, until Nicarchus the Arcadian came tearing along for bare life with a wound in

*vocabulary***ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

**ἐγγύς** near**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out

~plectrum

**Ἕλληγν** Greek**ἔντερον** guts ~entrails**ἐπήκοος** listening**ἐπιорκέω** swear falsely ~oath**ἐπισιτίζομαι** (ἰλι) take supplies**ἐρμηνεύς** -ος (m) interpreter**θέω** run, run for**κώμη** village**λοχαγός** (ἄ) captain**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**Πέρσης** Persian**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
come in**τριακόσιοι** three hundred ~three

καὶ τὰ ἔντερα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν ἔχων, καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα πάντες ἐκπεπληγμένοι καὶ νομίζοντες αὐτίκα ἥξειν αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. οἱ δὲ πάντες μὲν οὐκ ἦλθον, Ἀριαῖος δὲ καὶ Ἀρτάοζος καὶ Μιθραδάτης, οἱ ἦσαν Κύρω πιστότατοι· ὁ δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐρμηνεὺς ἔφη καὶ τὸν Τισσαφέρνους ἀδελφὸν σὺν αὐτοῖς ὀράν καὶ γινγνώσκειν· ξυνηκολούθουν δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν τεθωρακισμένοι εἰς τριακοσίους.

Οὔτοι ἐπεὶ ἐγγὺς ἦσαν, προσελθεῖν ἐκέλευον εἴ τις εἴη τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγὸς ἢ λοχαγός, ἵνα ἀπαγγείλωσι τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξῆλθον φυλαττόμενοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ μὲν Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος καὶ Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, ξὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ Προξένου· Χειρίσοφος δὲ ἐτύγχανεν ἀπὼν ἐν κώμῃ τινὶ ξὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτιζομένοις.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, εἶπεν Ἀριαῖος τάδε.  
«Κλέαρχος μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ ἐπιορκῶν τε

καὶ τὰ |guts ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν ἔχων, καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ  
γεγεννημένα. ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ |Greek |run ἐπὶ τὰ  
|tool πάντες |panic, be knocked out καὶ νομίζοντες αὐτίκα ἤξιν  
αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. οἱ δὲ πάντες μὲν οὐκ ἦλθον,  
Ἀριαῖος δὲ καὶ Ἀρτάοζος καὶ Μιθραδάτης, οἱ ἦσαν Κύρω  
|faithful; |trustworthy ὁ δὲ τῶν |Greek |interpreter ἔφη καὶ τὸν  
Τισσαφέρνους ἀδελφὸν σὺν αὐτοῖς ὁρᾶν καὶ γινώσκειν·  
ξυνηκολούθουν δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν τεθωρακισμένοι εἰς  
|three hundred  
Οὗτοι ἐπεὶ |near ἦσαν, |come forward, 'sur- render, come in  
τῶν |Greek στρατηγὸς ἢ |captain , ἵνα |announce, or- der, promise  
τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξῆλθον φυλαττόμενοι  
τῶν |Greek στρατηγοὶ μὲν Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος  
καὶ Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, ξὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ Ξενοφῶν  
Ἀθηναῖος, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ Προξένου· Χειρίσοφος δὲ  
ἐτύγγανεν ἀπὼν ἐν |village τινὶ ξὺν ἄλλοις |take supplies  
Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔστησαν εἰς |listening , εἶπεν Ἀριαῖος τάδε.  
«Κλέαρχος μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες |Greek , ἐπεὶ |swear |falsely τε

the belly, and clutching his protruding entrails in his hands. He told them all that had happened. Instantly the Hellenes ran to their arms, one and all, in utter consternation, and fully expecting that the enemy would instantly be down upon the camp. However, they did not all come; only Ariaeus came, and Artaozus and Mithridates, who were Cyrus's most faithful friends; but the interpreter of the Hellenes said he saw and recognised the brother of Tissaphernes also with them. They had at their back other Persians also, armed with cuirasses, as many as three hundred.

As soon as they were within a short distance, they bade any general or captain of the Hellenes who might be there to approach and hear a message from the king. After this, two Hellene generals went out with all precaution. These were Cleanor the Orchomenian, and Sophaenetus the Stymphalion, attended by Xenophon the Athenian, who went to learn news of Proxenus. Cheirisophus was at the time away in a village with a party gathering provisions.

As soon as they had halted within earshot, Ariaeus said: «Hellenes, Clearchus being shown to have committed perjury and to

*vocabulary*

**ἄθεος** godless; by the gods  
**αἰσχύνω** (ὀ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure,  
 mar  
**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned  
**Ἕλληγ** Greek  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
 ~volunteer  
**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme ~volunteer  
**καταγγέλλω** announce; denounce

**ὅμνυμι** (ὀ) swear  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὄρκος** what is sworn by, witness, oath  
 ~orc  
**πανοῦργος** wicked; cunning  
**προδίδωμι** betray  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**τοῖνον** well, then  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

ἐφάνη καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς λύων, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκε,  
 Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων, ὅτι κατήγγειλαν αὐτοῦ τὴν  
 ἐπιβουλήν, ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ εἰσιν. ὑμᾶς δὲ βασιλεὺς τὰ  
 ὄπλα ἀπαιτεῖ· αὐτοῦ γὰρ εἶναί φησιν, ἐπείπερ Κύρου ἦσαν  
 τοῦ ἐκείνου δούλου.»

Πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίναντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἔλεγε δὲ Κλεάνωρ ὁ  
 Ὀρχομένιος· «ᾧ κάκιστε ἀνθρώπων Ἀριαῖε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι  
 ὅσοι ἦτε Κύρου φίλοι, οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε οὔτε θεοὺς οὔτ'  
 ἀνθρώπους, οἵτινες ὁμόσαντες ἡμῖν τοὺς αὐτοὺς φίλους  
 καὶ ἐχθροὺς νομεῖν, προδόντες ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει  
 τῷ ἀθεωτάτῳ τε καὶ πανουργοτάτῳ; τοὺς τε ἄνδρας  
 αὐτοὺς οἷς ὤμνυτε ἀπολωλέκατε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἡμᾶς  
 προδεδωκότες ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἔρχεσθε.» ὁ  
 δὲ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε· «Κλέαρχος γὰρ πρόσθεν ἐπιβουλεύων  
 φανερὸς ἐγένετο Τισσαφέρνει τε καὶ Ὀρόντα, καὶ πᾶσιν  
 ἡμῖν τοῖς ξὺν τούτοις.»

Ἐπὶ τούτοις Ξενοφῶν τάδε εἶπε. «Κλέαρχος μὲν τοῖνυν  
 εἰ παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους ἔλυσεν τὰς σπονδάς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει·



ἐφάνη καὶ τὰς |libation,  
|treaty λύων, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκε,  
Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων, ὅτι |announce;  
|denounce αὐτοῦ τὴν  
|a plot, scheme· ὡς μεγάλη τιμῇ εἰσιν. ὑμᾶς δὲ βασιλεὺς τὰ  
|tool |demand to ὡς γὰρ εἶναί φησιν, ἐπέειπερ Κύρου ἦσαν  
|have returned  
τοῦ ἐκείνου δούλου.»

Πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίναντο οἱ |Greek , ἔλεγε δὲ Κλεάνωρ ὁ  
Ὅρχομένιος· «ὦ κάκιστε ἀνθρώπων Ἀριαῖε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι  
ὅσοι ἦτε Κύρου φίλοι, οὐκ |spoil,  
|disgrace οὔτε θεοὺς οὔτ'  
ἀνθρώπους, οἵτινες ὁμόσαντες ἡμῖν τοὺς αὐτοὺς φίλους  
καὶ ἐχθροὺς νομιεῖν, |betray ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει  
τῷ |godless; by the gods· |wicked; cunning , τοὺς τε ἄνδρας  
αὐτοὺς οἷς ὥμνυτε ἀπολωλέκατε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἡμᾶς  
|betray ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἔρχεσθε.» ὁ  
δὲ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε· «Κλέαρχος γὰρ πρόσθεν |plot, plan, harm  
|visible, , ἐνετο Τισσαφέρνει τε καὶ Ὀρόντα, καὶ πᾶσιν  
|conspicuous  
ἡμῖν τοῖς ξὺν τούτοις.»

Ἐπὶ τούτοις Ξενοφῶν τάδε εἶπε. «Κλέαρχος μὲν |well, then  
εἰ παρὰ τοὺς |oath ἔλυσεν τὰς |libation,  
|treaty , τὴν δίκην ἔχει·

have broken the truce, has suffered the penalty, and he is dead; but Proxenus and Menon, in return for having given information of his treachery, are in high esteem and honour. As to yourselves, the king demands your arms. He claims them as his, since they belonged to Cyrus, who was his slave.”

To this the Hellenes made answer by the mouth of Cleanor of Orchomenus, their spokesman, who said, addressing Ariaeus: «Thou villain, Ariaeus, and you the rest of you, who were Cyrus’s friends, have you no shame before God or man, first to swear to us that you have the same friends and the same enemies as we ourselves, and then to turn and betray us, making common cause with Tissaphernes, that most impious and villainous of men? With him you have murdered the very men to whom you gave your solemn word and oath, and to the rest of us turned traitors; and, having so done, you join hand with our enemies to come against us.”

Ariaeus answered: «There is no doubt but that Clearchus has been known for some time to harbour designs against Tissaphernes and Orontas, and all of us who side with them.”

Taking up this assertion, Xenophon said: «Well, then, granting that Clearchus broke the truce contrary to our oaths,

*vocabulary*

ἀποτέμνω cut off, sever ~tonsure

βάρβαρος non-Greek

βέλτιστος best, noblest

δεῦρο here, come here!

δῆλος visible, conspicuous

διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion

διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish  
~practice

ἐκπλέω sail away ~float

Ἕλλην Greek

ἐμπειρος experienced

ἐπιορκέω swear falsely ~oath

ἔσχατος farthest, last

εὐεργέτης -ου (m, 1) benefactor

ἔφορος fair wind; guardian; hill

ἠώς ἠῶτι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene

ὁμολογουμένως admittedly, by consent

παραμένω stay with ~remain

πολεμικός warlike, hostile ~polemic

συμβουλεύω give advice; (mid) consult  
~volunteer

τελευτάω bring about, finish ~apostle

ὕμέτερος (ῶ) yours

φιλοπόλεμος war-loving ~mind

δίκαιον γὰρ ἀπόλλυσθαι τοὺς ἐπιιορκούντας· Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ἐπείπερ εἰσὶν ὑμέτεροι μὲν εὐεργέται, ἡμέτεροι δὲ στρατηγοί, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς δεῦρο· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι φίλοι γε ὄντες ἀμφοτέροις πειράσσονται καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν τὰ βέλτιστα συμβουλευῆσαι.»

Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι πολὺν χρόνον διαλεχθέντες ἀλλήλοις ἀπήλθον οὐδὲν ἀποκρινάμενοι.

## 2.6

Οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατηγοὶ οὕτω ληφθέντες ἀνήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέα καὶ ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλὰς ἐτελεύτησαν, εἰς μὲν αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων τῶν ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων δόξας γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ πολεμικὸς καὶ φιλοπόλεμος ἐσχάτως. καὶ γὰρ δὴ ἕως μὲν πόλεμος ἦν τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους παρέμενεν, ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο, πείσας τὴν αὐτοῦ πόλιν ὡς οἱ Θρᾶκες ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ διαπραξάμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο παρὰ τῶν ἐφόρων ἐξέπλει

δίκαιον γὰρ ἀπόλλυσθαι τοὺς |swear falsely      Πρόξενος δὲ  
 καὶ Μένων ἐπέπερ εἰσὶν |yours      μὲν |benefactor , ἡμέτεροι  
 δὲ στρατηγοί, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς |here,      |visible, ἵτι φίλοι  
 |come      |conspicuous  
 γε ὄντες ἀμφοτέροις πειράσσονται καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν τὰ  
 |best,      |συμβουλεύω?: give advice; (mid) consult; or συμβουλεύω?: give ad-  
 |noblest      |vice; (mid) consult

Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ |non-Greek πολὺν χρόνον |go through, debate  
 ἀλλήλοις ἀπηλθον οὐδὲν ἀποκρινάμενοι.

## 2.6

Οἱ μὲν δὲ στρατηγοὶ οὕτω ληφθέντες ἀνήχθησαν ὡς  
 βασιλέα καὶ |cut off, sever τὰς κεφαλὰς |bring about,,  
 |finish  
 εἰς μὲν αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος |admittedly, by ἐκ πάντων  
 |consent  
 τῶν ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων δόξας γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ  
 |warlike, καὶ |war-loving |farthest . καὶ γὰρ δὲ  
 |hostile  
 ἕως μὲν πόλεμος ἦν τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις πρὸς τοὺς  
 Ἀθηναίους |stay with , ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο, πείσας  
 τὴν αὐτοῦ πόλιν ὡς οἱ Θρᾶκες ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς |Greek  
 καὶ |travel over, ac- ὡς ἐδύνατο παρὰ τῶν |fair wind; sail away  
 |comply      |guardian;  
 |hill

he has his deserts, for perjurers deserve to perish; but where are Proxenus and Menon, our generals and your good friends and benefactors, as you admit? Send them back to us. Surely, just because they are friends of both parties, they will try to give us the best advice for you and for us.”

At this, the Asiatics stood discussing with one another for a long while, and then they went away without vouchsafing a word.

## 2.6

The generals who were thus seized were taken up to the king and there decapitated. The first of these, Clearchus, was a thorough soldier, and a true lover of fighting. This is the testimony of all who knew him intimately. As long as the war between the Lacedaemonians and Athenians lasted, he could find occupation at home; but after the peace, he persuaded his own city that the Thracians were injuring the Hellenes, and having secured his object, set sail, empowered by the ephorate to make war upon the Thracians north of the

*vocabulary***αἰσχύνῃ** (ὅ) shame, dishonor**ἀκίνδυνος** (ὅ) safe**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. sin**ἀπειθέω** disobey**ἀποστρέφω** turn back, turn off course  
~atrophy**βλάβη** harm**δαρεικός** Persian coin**διαγίγνομαι** go through; subsist  
~genus**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἔφορος** fair wind; guardian; hill**θανατόω** kill ~euthanasia**μείων** less, smaller**μεταγινώσκω** change one's mind  
~gnostic**μέχρι** as far as, until**μυρίος** (ὅ) 10,000 ~myriad**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**ῥαθυμέω** be careless, at ease**ῥαθυμία** (ᾱῦα) carelessness, ease**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**φιλοπόλεμος** war-loving ~mind**φυγᾶς** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee  
~fugitive**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive

ὥς πολεμήσων τοῖς ὑπὲρ Χερρονήσου καὶ Περίνθου  
 Θραξίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ μεταγρόντες πως οἱ ἔφοροι ἤδη ἔξω ὄντος  
 ἀποστρέφειν αὐτὸν ἐπειρῶντο ἐξ Ἴσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι  
 πείθεται, ἀλλ' ὥχετο πλέων εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον. ἐκ τούτου  
 καὶ ἐθανατώθη ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ τελεῶν ὥς ἀπειθῶν.

Ἦδη δὲ φυγὰς ὣν ἔρχεται πρὸς Κῦρον, καὶ ὁποίοις μὲν  
 λόγοις ἔπεισε Κῦρον ἄλλῃ γέγραπται, δίδωσι δὲ αὐτῷ  
 Κῦρος μυρίους δαρεικούς· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐπὶ ῥαθυμίαν  
 ἐτράπετο, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων συλλέξας  
 στράτευμα ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί, καὶ μάχῃ τε ἐνίκησε  
 καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου δὴ ἔφερε καὶ ἦγε τούτους καὶ πολεμῶν  
 διεγένετο μέχρι Κῦρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος· τότε δὲ  
 ἀπῆλθεν ὥς ξὺν ἐκείνῳ αὐτῷ πολεμήσων.

Ταῦτα οὖν φιλοπολέμου μοι δοκεῖ ἀνδρὸς ἔργα εἶναι,  
 ὅστις ἐξὸν μὲν εἰρήνην ἄγειν ἄνευ αἰσχύνης καὶ βλάβης  
 αἰρεῖται πολεμεῖν, ἐξὸν δὲ ῥαθυμεῖν βούλεται πονεῖν ὥστε  
 πολεμεῖν, ἐξὸν δὲ χρήματα ἔχειν ἀκινδύνως αἰρεῖται  
 πολεμῶν μείονα ταῦτα ποιεῖν· ἐκεῖνος δὲ ὥσπερ εἰς



ὥς πολεμήσων τοῖς ὑπὲρ Χερρονήσου καὶ Περίνθου

Θραξίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ |change one's mind \_ οἱ |fair wind; ᾤοντο ὄντος  
|guardian; hill

|turn back αὐτὸν ἐπειρῶντο ἐξ Ἰσθμοῦ, |there, here. ἵκέτι

πείθεται, ἀλλ' |come, go λέων εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον. ἐκ τούτου

καὶ |kill ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ τελῶν ὥς ἀπειθῶν.

Ἦδη δὲ φυγὰς ὣν ἔρχεται πρὸς Κῦρον, καὶ |whatever kind

λόγοις ἔπεισε Κῦρον ἄλλη γέγραπται, δίδωσι δὲ αὐτῷ

Κῦρος μυρίας |Persian coin ὁ δὲ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐπὶ |carelessness, ease

ἐτράπετο, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων |collect,  
|assemble

|army ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί, καὶ μάχῃ τε ἐνίκησε

καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου δὴ ἔφερε καὶ ἦγε τούτους καὶ πολεμῶν

|go through; as far as, until ἐδεήθη τοῦ |army τότε δὲ  
|subsist

ἀπῆλθεν ὥς ξὺν ἐκείνῳ αὐ πολεμήσων.

Ταῦτα οὖν |war-loving μοι δοκεῖ ἀνδρὸς ἔργα εἶναι,

ὅστις |go forth; εἰρήνην ἄγειν |away |shame, καὶ |harm  
|is possible |from; |dishonor

αἰρεῖται πολεμεῖν, |go forth; |be careless, at ease ... |work ὥστε

πολεμεῖν, |go forth; |χρήματα |not need- |safe αἰρεῖται

πολεμῶν |less, |smaller ταῦτα ποιεῖν ἐκείνος δὲ ὥσπερ εἰς

Chersonese and Perinthus. But he had no sooner fairly started than, for some reason or other, the ephors changed their minds, and endeavoured to bring him back again from the isthmus. Thereupon he refused further obedience, and went off with sails set for the Hellespont. In consequence he was condemned to death by the Spartan authorities for disobedience to orders.

And now, finding himself an exile, he came to Cyrus. Working on the feelings of that prince, in language described elsewhere, he received from his entertainer a present of ten thousand darics. Having got this money, he did not sink into a life of ease and indolence, but collected an army with it, carried on war against the Thracians, and conquered them in battle, and from that date onwards harried and plundered them with war incessantly, until Cyrus wanted his army; whereupon he at once went off, in hopes of finding another sphere of warfare in his company.

These, I take it, were the characteristic acts of a man whose affections are set on warfare. When it is open to him to enjoy peace with honour, no shame, no injury attached, still he prefers war; when he may live at home at ease, he insists on toil, if only it may end in fighting; when it is given to him to keep his riches without risk, he would rather lessen his fortune by the pastime of battle. To put it briefly, war was his mistress; just

*vocabulary*

**ἀκόλαστος** wild, licentious  
**ἀρχικός** royal, fit for rule; primal  
 ~oligarch  
**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste  
**ἐμποιέω** make inside of ~poet  
**ἐνίοτε** sometimes  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἡδονή** pleasure  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
**κολάζω** punish  
**μεταμέλομαι** (impers.+dat.) cause  
 regret to; (mp) regret  
**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to  
**ὀργή** urge, impulse; anger  
**ὄφελος** -εος (n, 3) a use, a help  
**παιδικός** childlike; a darling

~pediatrician  
**πανταχοῦ** everywhere; completely  
**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**στυγνός** hated, gloomy ~Styx  
**τραχύς** (ᾱ) rough ~trachea  
**φιλοκίνδυνος** (ῥ) adventurous,  
 foolhardy  
**φιλοπόλεμος** war-loving ~mind  
**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent  
**φροντίζω** consider, ponder  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

παιδικὰ ἢ εἰς ἄλλην τινὰ ἡδονὴν ἤθελε δαπανᾶν εἰς πόλεμον.

Οὕτω μὲν φιλοπόλεμος ἦν· πολεμικὸς δὲ αὖ ταύτῃ ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι φιλοκίνδυνός τε ἦν καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς ἄγων ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς φρόνιμος, ὥς οἱ παρόντες πανταχοῦ πάντες ὠμολόγουν.

Καὶ ἀρχικὸς δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι ὥς δυνατὸν ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου τρόπου οἶον κακεῖνος εἶχεν. ἱκανὸς μὲν γὰρ ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος φροντίζειν ἦν ὅπως ἔχοι ἡ στρατιὰ αὐτῷ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα, ἱκανὸς δὲ καὶ ἐμποιῆσαι τοῖς παροῦσιν ὥς πειστέον εἶη Κλεάρχῳ. τοῦτο δ' ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ χαλεπὸς εἶναι· καὶ γὰρ ὁρᾶν στυγνὸς ἦν καὶ τῇ φωνῇ τραχύς, ἐκόλαζέ τε ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ ὀργῇ ἐνίοτε, ὥς καὶ αὐτῷ μεταμέλειν ἔσθ' ὅτε. καὶ γνώμῃ δ' ἐκόλαζεν· ἀκολάστου γὰρ στρατεύματος οὐδὲν ἡγεῖτο ὄφελος εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὥς δέοι τὸν στρατιώτην φοβεῖσθαι μᾶλλον τὸν ἄρχοντα ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλοι ἢ φυλακὰς φυλάξειν ἢ φίλων

παιδικὰ ἢ εἰς ἄλλην τινὰ |pleasure ἤθελε |spend, con- is  
|sume, waste  
πόλεμον.

Οὕτω μὲν |war-loving ἦν· |warlike, δὲ αὖ ταύτῃ ἐδόκει  
|hostile  
εἶναι ὅτι |adventurous, τε ἦν καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς ἄγων  
|foolhardy  
ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς |sensible, , ὥς οἱ  
|prudent  
παρόντες |everywhere; γάντες |agree with/to  
|completely

Καὶ |royal, fit for ἐλέγετο εἶναι ὡς δυνατόν ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου  
|rule; primal  
τρόπου οἷον κάκεῖνος εἶχεν. ἱκανὸς μὲν γὰρ ὥς τις  
καὶ ἄλλος |consider, ἦν ὅπως ἔχοι ἡ στρατιὰ αὐτῶ  
|ponder  
τὰ |fit, suitable καὶ παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα, ἱκανὸς δὲ καὶ  
|make inside of ὃ παροῦσιν ὡς πειστέον εἶη Κλεάρχῳ. τοῦτο  
δ' ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ χαλεπὸς εἶναι· καὶ γὰρ ὁρᾶν |hated,  
|gloomy  
ἦν καὶ τῇ φωνῇ |rough , |punish τε |strong, forceful, |urge,  
|violent |impulse;  
|sometimes ὃ καὶ αὐτῶ μεταμέλειν ἔσθ' ὅτε. καὶ γνώμῃ |anger

δ' |punish |wild, licentious ὃ, |army οὐδὲν ἡγείτο  
|a use, a help ... , ἀλλὰ καὶ λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὡς δέοι  
τὸν |soldier, φοβεῖσθαι μᾶλλον τὸν ἄρχοντα ἢ τοὺς  
|mercenary  
πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλοι ἢ |guard, φυλάξειν ἢ φίλων  
|prison,  
|watch

as another man will spend his fortune on a favourite, or to gratify some pleasure, so he chose to squander his substance on soldiering.

But if the life of a soldier was a passion with him, he was none the less a soldier born, as herein appears; danger was a delight to him; he courted it, attacking the enemy by night or by day; and in difficulties he did not lose his head, as all who ever served in a campaign with him would with one consent allow.

A Good soldier! The question arises, Was he equally good as a commander? It must be admitted that, as far as was compatible with his quality of temper, he was; none more so. Capable to a singular degree of devising how his army was to get supplies, and of actually getting them, he was also capable of impressing upon those about him that Clearchus must be obeyed; and that he brought about by the very hardness of his nature. With a scowling expression and a harshly-grating voice, he chastised with severity, and at times with such fury, that he was sorry afterwards himself for what he had done. Yet it was not without purpose that he applied the whip; he had a theory that there was no good to be got out of an unchastened army. A saying of his is recorded to the effect that the soldier who is to mount guard and keep his hands off his friends, and be ready to dash without

*vocabulary*

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse

**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail

**ἀπροφάσιτος** unhesitating

**διάκειμαι** be in a condition

**διδάσκαλος** teacher

**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion

**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet

**ἐρρωμένος** vigorous, powerful

**εὐνοια** good will, gift

**εὐτακτος** orderly, disciplined

**θαρσαλέος** bold, over-bold

**οὐδέποτε** never

**ῥώννυμι** (ϋ) strengthen; (pf pass) be strong, eager, healthy

**ῥόομαι** move nimbly, rush, stream

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy

**στυγνός** hated, gloomy ~Styx

**σφόδρα** very much

**σωτήριος** saving

**τιμωρία** (τι) vengeance, punishment

**φαιδρός** beaming ~photon

**φίλιος** friendly

**χρήσιμος** useful

**ώμός** raw

ἀφέξεσθαι ἢ ἀπροφασίστως ἵεναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. ἐν μὲν οὖν τοῖς δεινοῖς ἤθελον αὐτοῦ ἀκούειν σφόδρα καὶ οὐκ ἄλλον ἡρῶντο οἱ στρατιῶται· καὶ γὰρ τὸ στυγνὸν τότε φαιδρὸν αὐτοῦ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις προσώποις ἔφασαν φαίνεσθαι καὶ τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐρρωμένον πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐδόκει εἶναι, ὥστε σωτήριον, οὐκέτι χαλεπὸν ἐφαίνετο· ὅτε δ' ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ γένοιντο καὶ ἐξείη πρὸς ἄλλον ἀρξομένους ἀπιέναι, πολλοὶ αὐτὸν ἀπέλειπον· τὸ γὰρ ἐπίχαρι οὐκ εἶχεν, ἀλλ' αἰὲ χαλεπὸς ἦν καὶ ὠμός· ὥστε διέκειντο πρὸς αὐτὸν οἱ στρατιῶται ὥσπερ παῖδες πρὸς διδάσκαλον. καὶ γὰρ οὖν φιλία μὲν καὶ εὐνοία ἐπομένους οὐδέποτε εἶχεν· οὔτινες δὲ ἢ ὑπὸ πόλεως τεταγμένοι ἢ ὑπὸ τοῦ δεῖσθαι ἢ ἄλλῃ τινὶ ἀνάγκῃ κατεχόμενοι παρείησαν αὐτῷ, σφόδρα πειθόμενοις ἐχρήτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄρξαιντο νικᾶν ξὺν αὐτῷ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἤδη μεγάλα ἦν τὰ χρησίμους ποιοῦντα εἶναι τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ στρατιώτας· τό τε γὰρ πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους θαρραλέως ἔχειν παρῆν καὶ τὸ τὴν παρ' ἐκείνου τιμωρίαν φοβεῖσθαι εὐτάκτους ἐποίει. τοιοῦτος



ward off, drive|unhesitating      ἵεναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους.  
off, refrain, be at  
some distance  
ἐν μὲν οὖν τοῖς δεινοῖς ἤθελον αὐτοῦ ἀκούειν |very much. καὶ  
οὐκ ἄλλον ἡρῶντο οἱ |soldier,      καὶ γὰρ τὸ |hated,  
|mercenary      |gloomy  
τότε |beaming αὐτοῦ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις προσώποις ἔφασαν  
φαίνεσθαι καὶ τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐρρωμένον πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους  
ἐδόκει εἶναι, ὥστε |saving      , οὐκέτι χαλεπὸν ἐφαίνετο·  
ὅτε δ' ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ γένοιτο καὶ ἐξείη πρὸς ἄλλον  
ἀρξομένους ἀπιέναι, πολλοὶ αὐτὸν ἀπέλειπον· τὸ γὰρ  
ἐπίχαρι οὐκ εἶχεν, ἀλλ' αἰὲ χαλεπὸς ἦν καὶ |raw      ὥστε  
|be in a condition. αὐτὸν οἱ |soldier,      ὥσπερ παῖδες πρὸς  
|mercenary  
|teacher      . καὶ γὰρ οὖν |friendly. ἐν καὶ |good will, gift ἔχουσιν  
|never      εἶχεν· οἷτινες δὲ ἢ ὑπὸ πόλεως τεταγμένοι ἢ ὑπὸ  
τοῦ δεῖσθαι ἢ ἄλλῃ τινὶ ἀνάγκῃ κατεχόμενοι παρείησαν  
αὐτῷ, |very much. μεθόμενοι ἐχρήτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄρξαιτο νικᾶν  
ξὺν αὐτῷ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἤδη μεγάλα ἦν τὰ |useful  
ποιοῦντα εἶναι τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ |soldier,      τό τε γὰρ πρὸς  
|mercenary  
τοὺς πολεμίους |bold      ἔχειν παρῆν καὶ τὸ τὴν παρ'  
ἐκείνου |vengeance, ὅβεισθαι |orderly,      ἐποίει. τοιοῦτος  
|punishment      |disciplined

a moment's hesitation against the foe—must fear his commander more than the enemy. Accordingly, in any strait, this was the man whom the soldiers were eager to obey, and they would have no other in his place. The cloud which lay upon his brow, at those times lit up with brightness; his face became radiant, and the old sternness was so charged with vigour and knitted strength to meet the foe, that it savoured of salvation, not of cruelty. But when the pinch of danger was past, and it was open to them to go and taste subordination under some other officer, many forsook him. So lacking in grace of manner was he; but was ever harsh and savage, so that the feeling of the soldiers towards him was that of schoolboys to a master. In other words, though it was not his good fortune ever to have followers inspired solely by friendship or goodwill, yet those who found themselves under him, either by state appointment or through want, or other arch necessity, yielded him implicit obedience. From the moment that he led them to victory, the elements which went to make his soldiers efficient were numerous enough. There was the feeling of confidence in facing the foe, which never left them, and there was the dread of punishment at his hands to keep them orderly.

*vocabulary***ἀδικία** injustice, offence**αἰδώς** awe, shame, respect; genitals**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin**ἀπεχθάνομαι** become hated ~external**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve ~stand**ἀργύριον** small coin**ἐμποιέω** make inside of ~poet**ἐνδηλος** visible, manifest**ἐπιθυμέω** (ῶ) wish, covet**ἐπιθυμία** (ῶ) desire, thing desired**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor**εὐεργέτης** -ου (m, 1) benefactor**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μειράκιον** youngster**πρόξενος** public/foreign agent, patron**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have sex ~genus**σφόδρα** very much**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

μὲν δὴ ἄρχων ἦν· ἄρχεσθαι δὲ ὑπὸ ἄλλων οὐ μάλα ἐθέλειν ἐλέγετο. ἦν δὲ ὅτε ἐτελεύτα ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντήκοντα ἔτη.

Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Βοιωτίας εὐθὺς μὲν μειράκιον ὦν ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ τὰ μεγάλα πράττειν ἱκανός· καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἐπιθυμίαν ἔδωκε Γοργία ἀργύριον τῷ Λεοντίνῳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένετο ἐκείνῳ, ἱκανὸς νομίσας ἤδη εἶναι καὶ ἄρχειν καὶ φίλος ὦν τοῖς πρώτοις μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι εὐεργετῶν, ἦλθεν εἰς ταύτας τὰς σὺν Κύρῳ πράξεις· καὶ ὥετο κτήσεσθαι ἐκ τούτων ὄνομα μέγα καὶ δύναμιν μεγάλην καὶ χρήματα πολλά· τοσούτων δ' ἐπιθυμῶν σφόδρα ἔνδηλον αὐτῷ καὶ τοῦτο εἶχεν, ὅτι τούτων οὐδὲν αὖ θέλοι κτᾶσθαι μετὰ ἀδικίας, ἀλλὰ σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ ὥετο δεῖν τούτων τυγχάνειν, ἄνευ δὲ τούτων μή. ἄρχειν δὲ καλῶν μὲν καὶ ἀγαθῶν δυνατὸς ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐτ' αἰδῶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ἑαυτοῦ οὐτε φόβον ἱκανὸς ἐμποιῆσαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡσχύνετο μᾶλλον τοὺς στρατιώτας ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι ἐκείνον· καὶ φοβούμενος μᾶλλον ἦν φανερὸς τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις ἢ οἱ στρατιῶται τὸ ἀπιστεῖν ἐκείνῳ. ὥετο

μὲν δὴ ἄρχων ἦν· ἄρχεσθαι δὲ ὑπὸ ἄλλων οὐ μάλα ἐθέλειν

ἐλέγετο. ἦν δὲ ὅτε |bring  
about,  
finish |ἀμφὶ τὰ |fifty ἔτη.

|public/foreign ὁ Βοιώτιος εὐθύς μὲν |youngster ὦν |wish,  
agent, patron |covet

γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ τὰ μεγάλα πράττειν ἱκανός· καὶ διὰ ταύτην

τὴν |desire, thing ὃν ἔδωκε Γοργία |small coin τῷ Λεοντίνῳ. ἐπεὶ  
desired

δὲ |associate with, |εἶνω, ἱκανὸς νομίσας ἤδη εἶναι καὶ ἄρχειν  
meet, have sex

καὶ φίλος ὦν τοῖς πρώτοις μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι εὐεργετῶν, ἦλθεν

εἰς ταύτας τὰς σὺν Κύρῳ πράξεις· καὶ ὥετο κτήσεσθαι

ἐκ τούτων ὄνομα μέγα καὶ δύναμιν μεγάλην καὶ χρήματα

πολλά· τοσοῦτων δ' |wish, covet |very much |visible,  
manifest

τοῦτο εἶχεν, ὅτι τούτων οὐδὲν ἂν θέλοι κτᾶσθαι μετὰ

ἀδικίας, ἀλλὰ σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ ὥετο δεῖν τούτων

τυγχάνειν, |away from; not hav- |. ἄρχειν δὲ καλῶν μὲν καὶ  
ing; not needing

ἀγαθῶν δυνατὸς ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐτ' |awe, shame, |soldier,  
respect; |mercenary

ἑαυτοῦ οὐτε φόβον ἱκανὸς |make inside of |λα καὶ |spoil,  
genitals |disgrace

μᾶλλον τοὺς |soldier, ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι ἐκείνον· καὶ  
mercenary

φοβούμενος μᾶλλον ἦν |visible, |. |become hated τοῖς  
conspicuous

|soldier, ἢ οἱ |soldier, τὸ |disbelieve ἐκείνῳ. ὥετο  
mercenary |mercenary

In this way and to this extent he knew how to rule; but to play a subordinate part himself he had no great taste; so, at any rate, it was said. At the time of his death he must have been about fifty years of age.

Proxenus, the Boeotian, was of a different temperament. It had been the dream of his boyhood to become a man capable of great achievements. In obedience to this passionate desire it was, that he paid his fee to Gorgias of Leontini. After enjoying that teacher's society, he flattered himself that he must be at once qualified to rule; and while he was on friendly terms with the leaders of the age, he was not to be outdone in reciprocity of service. In this mood he threw himself into the projects of Cyrus, and in return expected to derive from this essay the reward of a great name, large power, and wide wealth. But for all that he pitched his hopes so high, it was none the less evident that he would refuse to gain any of the ends he set before him wrongfully. Righteously and honourably he would obtain them, if he might, or else forego them. As a commander he had the art of leading gentlemen, but he failed to inspire adequately either respect for himself or fear in the soldiers under him. Indeed, he showed a more delicate regard for his soldiers than his subordinates for him, and he was indisputably more apprehensive of incurring their hatred than they

*vocabulary*

ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad  
 ἀπλός single; simple ~haploid  
 ἀπλώ spread, unfold  
 ἀρκέω satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
 ἀρχικός royal, fit for rule; primal  
 ~oligarch  
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous  
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion  
 ἐνδηλος visible, manifest  
 ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus  
 ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise  
 ἐπιβουλεύω plot, plan, harm  
 ~volunteer  
 ἐπιθυμέω (ō) wish, covet  
 ἐπιορκέω swear falsely ~oath  
 εὖνοος kindly; favorable

ἡλίθιος idle, vain, foolish  
 ἰσχυρός (ō) strong, forceful, violent  
 καταγελάω laugh at, deride  
 κατεργάζομαι achieve; cultivate; get;  
 kill  
 κερδαίνω profit, take advantage  
 κτήμα -τος (n, 3) possession  
 πλουτέω be rich  
 στέργω love; be content  
 σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion  
 σύντομος truncated, concise  
 τιμάω (ī) honor, exalt  
 τοιγάρ therefore  
 φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon  
 ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-

δὲ ἀρκεῖν πρὸς τὸ ἀρχικὸν εἶναι καὶ δοκεῖν τὸν μὲν  
καλῶς ποιῶντα ἐπαινεῖν, τὸν δὲ ἀδικοῦντα μὴ ἐπαινεῖν.  
τοιγαροῦν αὐτῷ οἱ μὲν καλοί τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ τῶν συνόντων  
εὖνοι ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ ἄδικοι ἐπεβούλευον ὡς εὐμεταχειρίστῳ  
ᾧ. ὅτε δὲ ἀπέθνησκειν ἦν ἐτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα.

Μένων δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς δῆλος ἦν ἐπιθυμῶν μὲν πλουτεῖν  
ἰσχυρῶς, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ ἄρχειν, ὅπως πλείω λαμβάνοι,  
ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ τιμᾶσθαι, ἵνα πλείω κερδαίνοι· φίλος τε  
ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστα δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ  
διδοίῃ δίκην. ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ κατεργάζεσθαι ὧν ἐπιθυμοίῃ  
συντομωτάτην ᾗετο ὁδὸν εἶναι διὰ τοῦ ἐπιорκεῖν τε καὶ  
ψεύδεσθαι καὶ ἐξαπατᾶν, τὸ δ' ἀπλοῦν καὶ ἀληθὲς τὸ αὐτὸ  
τῷ ἡλιθίῳ εἶναι. στέργων δὲ φανερός μὲν ἦν οὐδένα, ὅτῳ  
δὲ φαίῃ φίλος εἶναι, τούτῳ ἔνδηλος ἐγίγνετο ἐπιβουλεύων.  
καὶ πολεμίῳ μὲν οὐδενὸς κατεγέλα, τῶν δὲ συνόντων  
πάντων ὡς καταγελῶν ἀεὶ διελέγετο. καὶ τοῖς μὲν τῶν  
πολεμίων κτήμασιν οὐκ ἐπεβούλευε· χαλεπὸν γὰρ ᾗετο  
εἶναι τὰ τῶν φυλαττομένων λαμβάνειν· τὰ



δὲ |satisfy; ward off, de-royal, fit for ναὶ καὶ δοκεῖν τὸν μὲν  
|fend; suffice |rule; primal

καλῶς ποιοῦντα |concur , τὸν δὲ ἀδικοῦντα μὴ |concur .

τοιγαροῦν αὐτῷ οἱ μὲν καλοί τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ τῶν |be with; have sex

|kindly; , οἱ δὲ |unfair; |plot, plan, harm ἵς εὐμεταχειρίστῳ  
|favorable |obsti-

ῶντι. ὅτε δὲ ἀπέθιπκεν ἦν ἐτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα.  
|nate,  
|bad

Μένων δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς |visible, , |wish, covet μὲν |be rich  
|conspicuous

ἰσχυρῶς, |wish, covet δὲ ἄρχειν, ὅπως πλείῳ λαμβάνοι,

|wish, covet δὲ τιμᾶσθαι, ἵνα πλείῳ |profit, take φίλος τε  
|advantage

ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστα δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ

διδοίῃ δίκην. ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ |achieve; cultivate; ὦν |wish, covet  
|get; kill

|truncated, concise ᾗετο ὁδὸν εἶναι διὰ τοῦ |swear τε καὶ  
|falsely

|be false, deceive; |trick, cheat , τὸ δ' ἀπλοῦν καὶ ἀληθὲς τὸ αὐτὸ  
|(mid) to lie

τῷ |idle, vain, fool-|love; be content νερὸς μὲν ἦν οὐδένα, ὅτῳ  
|ish

δὲ φαίῃ φίλος εἶναι, τούτῳ |visible, ἐγίγνετο |plot, plan, harm  
|manifest

καὶ πολεμίου μὲν οὐδενὸς |laugh at, deride . δὲ |be with; have sex

πάντων ὡς |laugh at, deride ` |go through, debate ἡς μὲν τῶν

πολεμίων |possession οὐκ |plot, plan, harm , λεπὸν γὰρ ᾗετο

εἶναι τὰ τῶν φυλαττομένων λαμβάνειν· τὰ

were of losing their fidelity. The one thing needful to real and recognised generalship was, he thought, to praise the virtuous and to withhold praise from the evildoer. It can be easily understood, then, that of those who were brought in contact with him, the good and noble indeed were his well-wishers; but he laid himself open to the machinations of the base, who looked upon him as a person to be dealt with as they liked. At the time of his death he was only thirty years of age.

As to Menon the Thessalian, the mainspring of his action was obvious; what he sought after insatiably was wealth. Rule he sought after only as a stepping-stone to larger spoils. Honours and high estate he craved for simply that he might extend the area of his gains; and if he studied to be on friendly terms with the powerful, it was in order that he might commit wrong with impunity. The shortest road to the achievement of his desires lay, he thought, through false swearing, lying, and cheating; for in his vocabulary simplicity and truth were synonyms of folly. Natural affection he clearly entertained for nobody. If he called a man his friend it might be looked upon as certain that he was bent on ensnaring him. Laughter at an enemy he considered out of place, but his whole conversation turned upon the ridicule of his associates. In like manner, the possessions of his foes were secure from his designs, since it was no easy task, he thought, to steal from people on their guard; but it was his particular

*vocabulary*

**ἀγάλλω** exalt; mp: exult in  
**ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad  
**ἄνανδρος** without men; not manlike  
 ~androgynous  
**ἀπαίδευτος** uneducated, loutish  
 ~pediatrician  
**ἀσκέω** work on  
**ἀφανής** unseen, occult, obscure  
**ἀφύλακτος** unguarded ~phylactery  
**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
 ~ballistic  
**διαγελάω** laugh at, mock  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus  
**ἔξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπίορκος** falsely, perjuring ~oath  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**εὐεργεσία** good deed, public service  
 ~ergonomics

**θεοσέβεια** piety  
**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy  
**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;  
 enroll ~legion  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess  
**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive  
 ~mechanism  
**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**πανούργος** wicked; cunning  
**πλάσσω** form ~plaster  
**πρωτεύω** be first or foremost  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συναδικέω** join in wronging  
**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt  
**φίλιος** friendly  
**ψεῦδος** -ους (n, 3) a lie ~pseudo-  
**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-

δὲ τῶν φίλων μόνος ᾔετο εἰδέναι ῥᾶστον ὃν ἀφύλακτα λαμβάνειν. καὶ ὅσους μὲν αἰσθάνοιτο ἐπιόρκους καὶ ἀδίκους ὡς εὖ ὠπλισμένους ἐφοβεῖτο, τοῖς δὲ ὁσίοις καὶ ἀλήθειαν ἀσκοῦσιν ὡς ἀνάνδροις ἐπειράτο χρῆσθαι. ὥσπερ δέ τις ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ θεοσεβείᾳ καὶ ἀληθείᾳ καὶ δικαιοσύνῃ, οὕτω Μένων ἠγάλλετο τῷ ἐξαπατᾶν δύνασθαι, τῷ πλάσασθαι ψεύδη, τῷ φίλους διαγελᾶν· τὸν δὲ μὴ πανοῦργον τῶν ἀπαιδευτῶν ἀεὶ ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι. καὶ παρ' οἷς μὲν ἐπεχείρει πρωτεύειν φιλία, διαβάλλων τοὺς πρώτους τοῦτο ᾔετο δεῖν κτήσασθαι. τὸ δὲ πειθομένους τοὺς στρατιώτας παρέχεσθαι ἐκ τοῦ συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς ἐμχανᾶτο. τιμᾶσθαι δὲ καὶ θεραπεύεσθαι ἡξίου ἐπιδεικνύμενος ὅτι πλεῖστα δύναιτο καὶ ἐθέλοι ἂν ἀδικεῖν. εὐεργεσίαν δὲ κατέλεγεν, ὅποτε τις αὐτοῦ ἀφίσταται, ὅτι χρώμενος αὐτῷ οὐκ ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν.

Καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ ἀφανῆ ἕξεσσι περὶ αὐτοῦ ψεύδεσθαι, ἃ δὲ πάντες ἴσασι τάδ' ἐστί. παρὰ Ἀριστίππου

δὲ τῶν φίλων μόνος ᾤετο εἰδέναι ῥᾶστον ὃν |unguarded  
 λαμβάνειν. καὶ ὅσους μὲν αἰσθάνοιτο |falsely, καὶ  
 |perjuring  
 |unfair; ob-<sup>-s</sup> εὖ |prepare, arm ἐφοβείτο, τοῖς δὲ ὁσίοις  
 |stinate, bad  
 καὶ |truth |work on ὥς |without men; τειράτο χρήσθαι.  
 |not manlike  
 ὥσπερ δέ τις ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ |piety καὶ |truth  
 καὶ δικαιοσύνητι, οὕτω Μένων ἡγάλλετο τῷ |trick, cheat  
 δύνασθαι, τῷ |form |a lie , τῷ φίλους |laugh at, mock  
 τὸν δὲ μὴ |wicked; τῶν |uneducated, αἰὲ ἐνόμιζεν  
 |cunning |loutish  
 εἶναι. καὶ παρ' οἷς μὲν |do, try, at-|be first or|friendly  
 |tack |foremost  
 |throw across; τοὺς πρώτους τοῦτο ᾤετο δεῖν κτήσασθαι.  
 |slander  
 τὸ δὲ πειθομένους τοὺς |soldier, παρέχεσθαι ἐκ  
 |mercenary  
 τοῦ |join in wronging' οἷς |build, |honor δὲ καὶ  
 |contrive  
 |help, serve ἡξίου |display, exhibit ὅτι πλεῖστα δύναιτο  
 καὶ ἐθέλοι ἂν ἀδικεῖν. |good deed, public|relate in detail, τότε  
 |service |choose; enroll  
 τις αὐτοῦ ἀφίστατο, ὅτι χρώμενος αὐτῷ οὐκ ἀπώλεσεν  
 αὐτόν.

Καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ |unseen, ὅ- τι περὶ αὐτοῦ |be false, deceive; ἔ  
 |cult, obscure | (mid) to lie  
 πάντες ἴσασι τὰδ' ἐστί. παρὰ Ἀριστίππου

good fortune to have discovered how easy it is to rob a friend in the midst of his security. If it were a perjured person or a wrongdoer, he dreaded him as well armed and intrenched; but the honourable and the truth-loving he tried to practise on, regarding them as weaklings devoid of manhood. And as other men pride themselves on piety and truth and righteousness, so Menon prided himself on a capacity for fraud, on the fabrication of lies, on the mockery and scorn of friends. The man who was not a rogue he ever looked upon as only half educated. Did he aspire to the first place in another man's friendship, he set about his object by slandering those who stood nearest to him in affection. He contrived to secure the obedience of his soldiers by making himself an accomplice in their misdeeds, and the fluency with which he vaunted his own capacity and readiness for enormous guilt was a sufficient title to be honoured and courted by them. Or if any one stood aloof from him, he set it down as a meritorious act of kindness on his part that during their intercourse he had not robbed him of existence.

As to certain obscure charges brought against his character, these may certainly be fabrications. I confine myself to the following facts, which are known to all. He was in the bloom of youth when he procured from Aristippus the command of his

*vocabulary*

**ἀγένειος** beardless, boyish  
**ἄκίζω** disrespect, mutilate  
**ἄμφω** both ~amphora  
**ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism  
**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**γενειάω** become a man  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**καταγελάω** laugh at, deride  
**μειράκιον** youngster

**μέμφομαι** blame; reject  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**παιδικός** childlike; a darling  
 ~pediatrician  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**συστράτηγος** fellow general ~strategy  
**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle  
**τιμωρέω** (τι) (+dat) take vengeance,  
 punish; aid one who has been attacked  
**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy  
**φίλιος** friendly  
**ώραῖος** ripe; young adult

μὲν ἔτι ὥραϊος ὢν στρατηγεῖν διεπράξατο τῶν ξένων, Ἀριαίῳ δὲ βαρβάρῳ ὄντι, ὅτι μειρακίοις καλοῖς ἦδeto, οἰκειότατος ἔτι ὥραϊος ὢν ἐγένετο, αὐτὸς δὲ παιδικὰ εἶχε Θαρύπαν ἀγένειος ὢν γενειῶντα. ἀποθνησκόντων δὲ τῶν συστρατῆγων ὅτι ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ξὺν Κύρῳ, ταῦτὰ πεποικῶς οὐκ ἀπέθανε, μετὰ δὲ τὸν τῶν ἄλλων θάνατον στρατηγῶν τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν, οὐχ ὥσπερ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλὰς, ὥσπερ τάχιστος θάνατος δοκεῖ εἶναι, ἀλλὰ ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς ἐνιαυτὸν ὡς πονηρὸς λέγεται τῆς τελευτῆς τυχεῖν.

Ἀγίας δὲ ὁ Ἀρκὰς καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαιὸς καὶ τούτῳ ἀπεθανέτην. τούτων δὲ οὐθ' ὥς ἐν πολέμῳ κακῶν οὐδεὶς κατεγέλα οὐτ' εἰς φιλίαν αὐτοὺς ἐμέμφετο. ἦστην δὲ ἄμφω ἀμφὶ τὰ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα ἔτη ἀπὸ γενεᾶς.



μὲν ἔτι |ripe; ὦν |be a general |travel over, τῶν ξένων,  
|young |accomplish

Ἀριαίῳ δὲ |non-Greek ὄντι, ὅτι |youngster καλοῖς ἦδετο,

|household, familiar,ripe; ὦν ἐγένετο, αὐτὸς δὲ παιδικὰ  
|proper |young

εἶχε Θαρύπαν |adult ὦν |become a man ἱποθνησκόντων  
|beardless, |boyish

δὲ τῶν |fellow general ὅτι |make an expedition, βασιλέα ξὺν  
|war, campaign

Κύρω, ταῦτα πεποιηκὼς οὐκ ἀπέθανε, μετὰ δὲ τὸν τῶν

ἄλλων θάνατον στρατηγῶν |take vengeance, γὰρ βασιλέως  
|punish, aid

ἀπέθανεν, οὐχ ὥσπερ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ

|cut off, sever τὰς κεφαλὰς, ὅσπερ τάχιστος θάνατος

δοκεῖ εἶναι, ἀλλὰ ζῶν |disrespect, |cycle of a year πονηρὸς  
|mutilate

λέγεται τῆς |conclusion, υχεῖν.  
|fulfilment

Ἀγίας δὲ ὁ Ἀρκὰς καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαιὸς καὶ τούτῳ

ἀπεθανέτην. τούτων δὲ οὐθ' ὥς ἐν πολέμῳ κακῶν οὐδεὶς

|laugh at, deride' ἰς φιλίαν αὐτοῦς |blame; ἥστην δὲ ἄμφω  
|reject

ἀμφὶ τὰ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα ἔτη ἀπὸ |birth, race

mercenaries; he had not yet lost that bloom when he became exceedingly intimate with Ariaeus, a barbarian, whose liking for fair young men was the explanation; and before he had grown a beard himself, he had contracted a similar relationship with a bearded favourite named Tharypas. When his fellow-generals were put to death on the plea that they had marched with Cyrus against the king, he alone, although he had shared their conduct, was exempted from their fate. But after their deaths the vengeance of the king fell upon him, and he was put to death, not like Clearchus and the others by what would appear to be the speediest of deaths—decapitation—but, as report says, he lived for a year in pain and disgrace and died the death of a felon.

Agius the Arcadian and Socrates the Achaean were both among the sufferers who were put to death. To the credit, be it said, of both, no one ever derided either as cowardly in war: no one ever had a fault to find with either on the score of friendship. They were both about thirty-five years of age.